

# **STANDARD CHINESE**

**A MODULAR APPROACH**

## **STUDENT TEXT**

**MODULE 5: TRANSPORTATION**

**MODULE 6: ARRANGING A MEETING**

**August 1979**

**Copyright © 1980 by John H. T. Harvey, Lucille A. Barale,  
Roberta S. Barry, and Thomas E. Madden**



## PREFACE

Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach originated in an interagency conference held at the Foreign Service Institute in August 1973 to address the need generally felt in the U.S. Government language training community for improving and updating Chinese materials to reflect current usage in Beijing and Taipei.

The conference resolved to develop materials which were flexible enough in form and content to meet the requirements of a wide range of government agencies and academic institutions.

A Project Board was established consisting of representatives of the Central Intelligence Agency Language Learning Center, the Defense Language Institute, the State Department's Foreign Service Institute, the Cryptologic School of the National Security Agency, and the U.S. Office of Education, later joined by the Canadian Forces Foreign Language School. The representatives have included Arthur T. McNeill, John Hopkins, and John Boag (CIA); Colonel John F. Elder III, Joseph C. Hutchinson, Ivy Gibian, and Major Bernard Muller-Thym (DLI); James R. Frith and John B. Ratliff III (FSI); Kazuo Shitama (NSA); Richard T. Thompson and Julia Petrov (OE); and Lieutenant Colonel George Kozoriz (CFFLS).

The Project Board set up the Chinese Core Curriculum Project in 1974 in space provided at the Foreign Service Institute. Each of the six U.S. and Canadian government agencies provided funds and other assistance.

Gerard P. Kok was appointed project coordinator, and a planning council was formed consisting of Mr. Kok, Frances Li of the Defense Language Institute, Patricia O'Connor of the University of Texas, Earl M. Rickerson of the Language Learning Center, and James Wrenn of Brown University. In the fall of 1977, Lucille A. Barale was appointed deputy project coordinator. David W. Dellinger of the Language Learning Center and Charles R. Sheehan of the Foreign Service Institute also served on the planning council and contributed material to the project. The planning council drew up the original overall design for the materials and met regularly to review their development.

Writers for the first half of the materials were John H. T. Harvey, Lucille A. Barale, and Roberta S. Barry, who worked in close cooperation with the planning council and with the Chinese staff of the Foreign Service Institute. Mr. Harvey developed the instructional formats of the comprehension and production self-study materials, and also designed the communication-based classroom activities and wrote the teacher's guides. Lucille A. Barale and Roberta S. Barry wrote the tape scripts and the student text. By 1978 Thomas E. Madden and Susan C. Pola had joined the staff. Led by Ms. Barale, they worked as a team to produce the materials subsequent to Module 6.

All Chinese language material was prepared or selected by Chuan O. Chao, Ying-chih Chen, Hsiao-jung Chi, Eva Diao, Jan Hu, Tsung-mi Li, and Yunhui C. Yang, assisted for part of the time by Chieh-fang Ou Lee, Ying-ming Chen, and Joseph Yu Hsu Wang. Anna Affholder, Mei-li Chen, and Henry Khuo helped in the preparation of a preliminary corpus of dialogues.

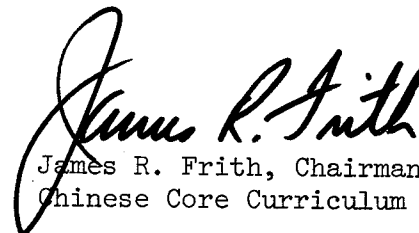
Administrative assistance was provided at various times by Vincent Basciano, Lisa A. Bowden, Jill W. Ellis, Donna Fong, Renee T. C. Liang, Thomas E. Madden, Susan C. Pola, and Kathleen Strype.

The production of tape recordings was directed by Jose M. Ramirez of the Foreign Service Institute Recording Studio. The Chinese script was voiced by Ms. Chao, Ms. Chen, Mr. Chen, Ms. Diao, Ms. Hu, Mr. Khuo, Mr. Li, and Ms. Yang. The English script was read by Ms. Barale, Ms. Barry, Mr. Basciano, Ms. Ellis, Ms. Pola, and Ms. Strype.

The graphics were produced by John McClelland of the Foreign Service Institute Audio-Visual staff, under the general supervision of Joseph A. Sadote, Chief of Audio-Visual.

Standard Chinese: A Modular Approach was field-tested with the cooperation of Brown University; the Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center; the Foreign Service Institute; the Language Learning Center; the United States Air Force Academy; the University of Illinois; and the University of Virginia.

Colonel Samuel L. Stapleton and Colonel Thomas G. Foster, Commandants of the Defense Language Institute, Foreign Language Center, authorized the DLIFLC support necessary for preparation of this edition of the course materials. This support included coordination, graphic arts, editing, typing, proofreading, printing, and materials necessary to carry out these tasks.



James R. Frith, Chairman  
Chinese Core Curriculum Project Board

## CONTENTS

Preface . . . . .	iii
 MODULE 5: TRANSPORTATION	
Objectives . . . . .	1
Map of Běijīng . . . . .	2
Map of Taipei . . . . .	3
Target Lists . . . . .	4
 UNIT 1	
Reference List . . . . .	12
Vocabulary . . . . .	14
Reference Notes . . . . .	15
Using buses	
"When"	
"First," "last," "next," "previous"	
<u>Duō</u> , "to be many," and <u>shǎo</u> , "to be few"	
Vocabulary Booster (Modes of Transportation) . . . . .	22
Drills . . . . .	23
 UNIT 2	
Reference List . . . . .	30
Vocabulary . . . . .	31
Reference Notes . . . . .	32
The marker <u>a</u> and its variant <u>ya</u>	
The locational endings <u>-shang</u> and <u>-li</u>	
More on the marker <u>ba</u>	
The aspect marker <u>ne</u>	
"Then": <u>jiù</u> , <u>zài</u> , <u>cái</u>	
Drills . . . . .	38
 UNIT 3	
Reference List . . . . .	44
Vocabulary . . . . .	46
Reference Notes . . . . .	48
The prepositional verb <u>bǎ</u>	
Adverbs expressing manner	
Drills . . . . .	54
 UNIT 4	
Reference List . . . . .	59
Vocabulary . . . . .	61
Reference Notes . . . . .	62
Choice questions with <u>háishi</u>	
More on topics and comments	
Compound verbs of result	
Drills . . . . .	67
 UNIT 5	
Reference List . . . . .	72
Vocabulary . . . . .	74

Reference Notes . . . . .	75
Distances	
Approximate numbers	
<u>Bān</u> , "one half"	
Drills . . . . .	80
UNIT 6	
Reference List . . . . .	87
Vocabulary . . . . .	89
Reference Notes . . . . .	91
More on verb reduplication (two-syllable verbs)	
Compound verbs of direction	
More on new-situation <u>le</u>	
Drills . . . . .	96
UNIT 7	
Reference List . . . . .	101
Vocabulary . . . . .	103
Reference Notes . . . . .	105
More on compound verbs of result	
"If"	
Vocabulary Booster (Animals) . . . . .	110
Drills . . . . .	111
UNIT 8	
Reference List . . . . .	117
Vocabulary . . . . .	119
Reference Notes . . . . .	121
"Why" and "because"	
Time <u>NOT</u> spent	
"All," "not all," "all...not"	
"Again": <u>yòu</u> , <u>zài</u>	
Drills . . . . .	129
MODULE 6: ARRANGING A MEETING	
Objectives . . . . .	135
Target Lists . . . . .	136
UNIT 1	
Reference List . . . . .	144
Vocabulary . . . . .	146
Reference Notes . . . . .	147
Making an appointment	
<u>Gēn</u> for "and" and <u>gēn</u> for "with"	
Three words for "time"	
The prepositional verb <u>duì</u> , "to," "towards," "facing"	
Comparisons: "more than"	
More on compound verbs of result	
Drills . . . . .	155

UNIT 2	
Reference List	161
Vocabulary	163
Reference Notes	164
Making phone calls	
The aspect marker <u>zài</u> for ongoing action	
"Whatever," "whenever," "whoever," "wherever"	
Verbs and general objects	
Vocabulary Booster (Occupations)	171
Drills	173
UNIT 3	
Reference List	178
Vocabulary	180
Reference Notes	181
Extending an invitation	
"Not only...but also..."	
Comparisons: "equal to," "alike"	
"Anyone," "anything," "anyplace," "anytime"	
Comparison: compound verbs of result and manner adverbs	
"Furthermore"	
Drills	188
UNIT 4	
Reference List	194
Vocabulary	196
Reference Notes	197
Meeting people	
More on completion <u>le</u>	
The prepositional verb <u>xiàng</u> , "facing"	
<u>Duō</u> and <u>shǎo</u> as adverbs	
Vocabulary Booster (Opposites)	201
Drills	204
UNIT 5	
Reference List	208
Vocabulary	210
Reference Notes	212
Taking and leaving messages	
Changing an appointment	
The prepositional verb <u>bǎ</u>	
<u>Gāng</u> and <u>gāngcái</u>	
More on compound verbs of result	
Drills	220
UNIT 6	
Reference List	225
Vocabulary	227
Reference Notes	229
Invitation to lunch	
Comparisons: "less than"	
"even more"	
Comparison overview	
Sentence patterns: "although" and "both...and..."	
Drills	235

UNIT 7	
Reference List . . . . .	241
Vocabulary . . . . .	243
Reference Notes . . . . .	244
Arranging an introduction	
Using word order to express "the" and "a"	
Objects of reduplicated verbs	
Three-part motion verbs	
Verbs for "remember" and "forget"	
Drills . . . . .	253
UNIT 8	
Reference List . . . . .	258
Vocabulary . . . . .	259
Reference Notes . . . . .	261
Declining invitations	
The prepositional verb <u>tì</u> , "in place of"	
More on compound verbs of result	
Comparison: <u>néng</u> , <u>kéyi</u> , <u>huì</u>	
Drills . . . . .	266



## MODULE 5: TRANSPORTATION

The Transportation Module (TRN) will provide you with the skills needed to use taxis, trains, buses, and planes in China.

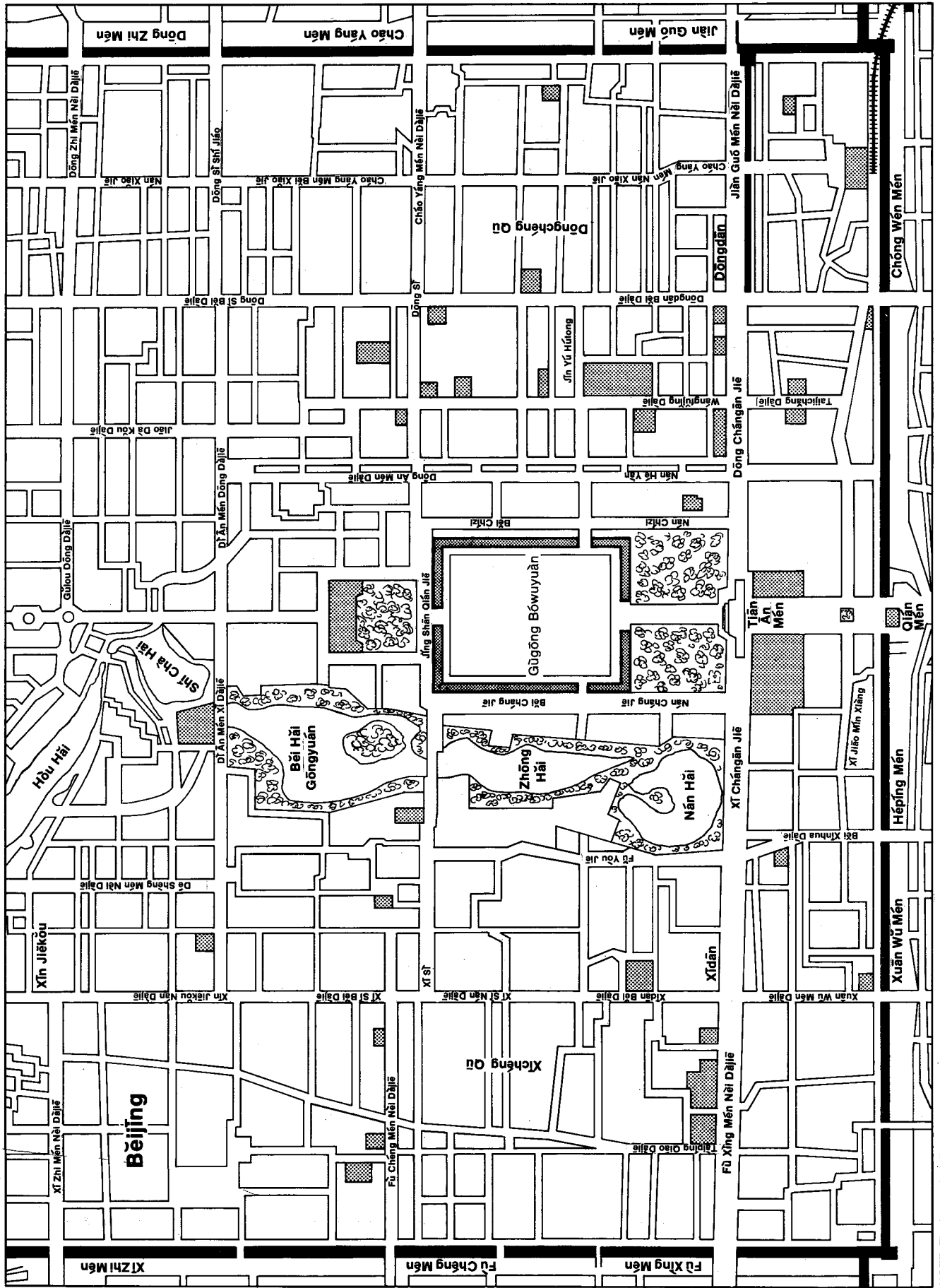
Before starting this module, you must take and pass the DIR Criterion Test.

The TRN Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from ORN, BIO, MON, DIR, and associated resource modules is also included.

### OBJECTIVES

Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to

1. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the TRN Target Lists.
2. Say any Chinese sentence in the TRN Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
3. Use the bus system: find out which buses go to a specific destination, at what times they leave, how often they run, where to buy tickets, where to change buses (if necessary), when the last bus of the day leaves, and where his stop is.
4. Take a taxi: hail one, tell the driver where to go, and use commands such as "hurry," "slow down," and "stop here."
5. Use the train system: find out which trains go to a specific destination, at what times they leave, when and where to buy tickets, whether or not tickets are available for a train leaving on a specific date at a specific time, the distance to the destination, the duration of the train trip to that place, which platform the train leaves from, what to do with luggage, and whether or not the train has a dining car.
6. Take a plane: reserve a ticket for a certain date and time; find out whether or not the flight is direct, the duration of the flight, and traveling time to the airport; and arrange for transportation to the airport.
7. Describe in detail a trip (taken in the past or planned for the future): places visited (which places and what they are like), traveling companions, transportation for the trip, length of stay, number of previous trips to the same places.



NOTE: The heavy dark lines show where the city walls were formerly located.



## UNIT 1 TARGET LIST

- |                                                              |                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlǜ chē?<br>Zuò Shíbāilǜ.          | What bus do you take to get to Ximending?<br>Take Number 18. |
| 2. Shíbāilǜ chē duō bu duō?<br>Bù hěn duō.                   | Are there many Number 18 buses?<br>Not very many.            |
| 3. Měi gé jǐfēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē?                         | How often is there a bus?                                    |
| 4. Wǒ měige Xīngqīliù dōu qù kàn diànyǐng.                   | I go to see a movie every Saturday.                          |
| 5. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?                        | What time is the last bus?                                   |
| 6. Zhèbān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng?<br>Shì. Shàng chē ba! | Does this bus go to Ximending?<br>Yes. Get on!               |
| 7. Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou, qǐng gàoosong wǒ.                 | When we get to Ximending, please tell me.                    |
| 8. Wǒ shì bu shì zài zhèli xià chē?<br>Bú shì. Xià yízhàn.   | Is it here that I get off?<br>No. The next stop.             |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                    |                                                                   |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9. shàng-          | last, previous (something)                                        |
| 10. tóu-           | first (something)                                                 |
| 11. gàoosu         | to tell, to inform (alternate pronunciation for <u>gàoosong</u> ) |
| 12. shǎo           | to be few                                                         |
| 13. xià chē        | to get off the bus; "Out, please!"                                |
| 14. yǒu(de) shíhou | sometimes                                                         |
| 15. chéng          | city                                                              |

## UNIT 2 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyou<br/>zhídáchē?</p> <p>Méiyou. Zuò Yīlù chē, zuò dao<br/>Xīdān huàn chē.</p> | <p>Is there a direct bus to the<br/>exhibition hall?</p> <p>No. Take the Number 1 bus; take<br/>it to Xīdān and change buses.</p> |
| <p>2. Zǎnmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?<br/>Zài chēshang mǎi piào.</p>                                               | <p>Where do we buy tickets?<br/>We buy tickets on the bus.</p>                                                                    |
| <p>3. Hǎo, xiànzài zǒu ba!</p>                                                                              | <p>Okay, let's go now!</p>                                                                                                        |
| <p>4. Èi! Zǎnmen bú shì zuòguò zhàn<br/>le ba?</p> <p>Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái<br/>xià chē.</p>           | <p>Hey! Haven't we gone past our<br/>stop?</p> <p>Not yet. We don't get off until<br/>the next stop.</p>                          |
| <p>5. Lǎojià, Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài<br/>nǎr?</p> <p>Jiù zài nèige lùkǒurshang.</p>                          | <p>Excuse me, where is the Number 15<br/>bus stop?</p> <p>It's (just) on that corner.</p>                                         |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                          |                                            |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <p>6. gōnggòng qìchē</p> | <p>public bus (local)</p>                  |
| <p>7. -lì</p>            | <p>in (locational ending)</p>              |
| <p>8. -shang</p>         | <p>on</p>                                  |
| <p>9. shàng bān</p>      | <p>to start work, to go to work</p>        |
| <p>10. xià bān</p>       | <p>to get off from work, to leave work</p> |

## UNIT 3 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                             |                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ yào zuò jìchéngchē dào huǒchēzhàn qu.                                 | I want to take a taxi to the train station.                                |
| 2. Wǒ zhǐ yǒu zhè liǎngjiàn xíngli.<br>Hǎo, wǒ bǎ xíngli fàng zai qiánbian. | I have only these two suitcases.<br>Okay, I'll put the suitcases in front. |
| 3. Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!                                                    | You are driving too fast!                                                  |
| 4. Tā kāi chē, kāide bú kuài.                                               | He doesn't drive fast.                                                     |
| 5. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān, láiidejí.                                             | We have time. We can make it in time.                                      |
| 6. Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi.                                                     | Please drive a little slower.                                              |
| 7. Bié kāi nàme kuài!                                                       | Don't drive so fast!                                                       |
| 8. Qǐng ni zài qiánbian nège yínháng tíng yíxià.                            | Please stop at that bank up ahead for a moment.                            |
| 9. Bú yòng zhǎo le.                                                         | Keep the change.                                                           |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                 |                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| 10. chūzū qìchē | taxi (PRC)                      |
| 11. láiibují    | can't make it in time           |
| 12. qìchē       | car, motor vehicle              |
| 13. zhème       | so, to this extent, in this way |
| 14. zènme       | so, to this extent, in this way |

## UNIT 4 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ xiǎng qù Táinán wán jitiān.                                                                                                    | I'm thinking of going to Tainan to relax for a few days.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 2. Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishì zuò Gōnglùjǔ qu hǎo ne?<br>Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo. Dào Táinán qù zuò Gōnglùjǔ bú dà fāngbian. | Would you say it's better to go by train or to go by bus?<br>It's better to go by train. To go to Tainan, it's not very convenient to take the bus.                                                                                     |
| 3. Zuò huǒchē děi xiān mǎi piào ma?<br>Nǐ zuìhǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián qù mǎi piào.<br>Zuò Gōnglùjǔ ne?<br>Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.        | If I take the train, is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?<br>It would be best for you to go to buy your tickets two or three days ahead of time.<br>And if I take the bus?<br>It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time. |
| 4. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?<br>Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.                                                                      | What train do you want to take?<br>I want to take a morning train.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 5. Duìbuqǐ, shàngwǔde piào dōu mǎiwán le.                                                                                            | I'm sorry, the tickets for the morning trains are all sold out.                                                                                                                                                                         |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                 |                                                     |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 6. chuán        | boat, ship                                          |
| 7. dìtiě        | subway (abbreviation for <u>dìxià tiědào</u> )      |
| 8. dìxià huǒchē | underground train, subway                           |
| 9. wán (wánr)   | to play, to relax, to enjoy oneself                 |
| 10. -wán        | to be finished (occurs in compound verbs of result) |

## UNIT 5 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ xiǎng dào Nánjīng qù kànkàn.<br>Nǐ jīhua nǐtiān qù?<br>Míngtiān huòshì hòutiān qù dōu<br>kěyǐ. | I would like to go to Nánjīng to<br>look around.<br>What day do you plan to go?<br>Tomorrow and (or) the day after are<br>both possible. |
| 2. Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō<br>yuǎn?<br>Yǒu liǎngbǎiwūshiduo gōnglǐ.                              | How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?<br>It's over 250 kilometers.                                                                           |
| 3. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao<br>shíhou?<br>Yào zǒu sìge bàn xiǎoshí.                                | How long does it take to go by train?<br>It takes four and a half hours.                                                                 |
| 4. Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng<br>qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo.                                           | This will be the first time I have<br>gone to Nánjīng. I haven't gone<br>there before.                                                   |
| 5. Bànge xiǎoshí gòu le.                                                                             | Half an hour is enough.                                                                                                                  |
| 6. Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.<br>Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu<br>yítàng tèkuài.                        | I hope to leave here in the afternoon.<br>There's an express at 1305.                                                                    |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                    |                                           |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 7. dǎsuan          | to plan to                                |
| 8. huòzhě (huòzhe) | or (alternate form of <u>huòshì</u> )     |
| 9. yǐhòu           | afterwards, later on, in the future       |
| 10. zhōngtóu       | hour (alternate word for <u>xiǎoshí</u> ) |



## UNIT 6 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Huǒchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?<br>Shíbādiǎn wúshiwǔfēn fā chē.                                              | What time does the train leave?<br>It departs at 1855.                                                                              |
| 2. Qǐng nǐ bǎ nǐde hùzhào hé<br>lǚxíngzhèng gěi wo.                                                      | Please give me your passport and<br>travel permit.                                                                                  |
| 3. Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài dìjǐ<br>zhàntái?                                                            | On which platform is the train to<br>Shànghǎi?                                                                                      |
| 4. Bú yòng jí. Hái zǎo ne. Nǐ<br>xiān zài zhèige jiēdàishì<br>xiūxi.                                     | No need to be anxious. It's still<br>early. First, rest a bit in<br>this waiting room.                                              |
| 5. Wǒ zhèijiàn xíngli zěnme bàn?<br>Shì bu shì kéyǐ nǎshàng chē<br>qu?<br>Kéyǐ bǎ xíngli nǎshàng chē qu. | What should I do about this suit-<br>case of mine? May I take it onto<br>the train?<br>You may take the suitcase onto the<br>train. |
| 6. Zhèibān chē yǒu cānchē ba?<br><br>Yǒu. Yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu<br>Xīcān.<br>Hǎojíle.                     | This train has a dining car, I<br>suppose?<br>Yes. There's Chinese food and<br>there's also Western food.<br>Great.                 |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                                                   |                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 7. bān                                            | to move                                                                       |
| 8. nǎshàngqu<br>nǎshànglái<br>nǎxiàqu<br>nǎxiàlái | to take up<br>to bring up<br>to take down<br>to bring down                    |
| 9. pǎo                                            | to run                                                                        |
| 10. wǎn                                           | to be late                                                                    |
| 11. yuètái                                        | train platform (alternate word for<br><u>zhàntái</u> , more common in Taiwan) |

## UNIT 7 TARGET LIST

- |                                                              |                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Lǎo Sòng, zěnmeyàng? Máng ne?<br>Bù zěnmé máng.           | Sòng, how are things going? Are you busy?<br>Not especially busy.          |
| 2. Qǐng ni gěi wo dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào.                   | Please reserve a plane ticket for me.                                      |
| 3. Piào dìnghǎo le.<br>Něibān fēijī?<br>Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?  | The ticket has been reserved.<br>Which flight? What time does it take off? |
| 4. Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu ma?                       | Does this flight go directly to Guǎngzhōu?                                 |
| 5. Cóng Sānlǐtún dào fēijīchǎng yào duōshao shíjiān?         | How much time does it take to go from Sānlǐtún to the airport?             |
| 6. Rúguǒ wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ba?              | If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?            |
| 7. Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái jiē wo, sòng wo dào fēijīchǎng qu. | Please send a car to pick me up and take me to the airport.                |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                 |                                                                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8. -hǎo le      | to be satisfactorily completed                                                   |
| 9. lǚguǎn       | hotel                                                                            |
| 10. shuōhǎo le  | to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on   |
| 11. xiǎnghǎo le | to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out |
| 12. yàoshi      | if (alternate word for <u>rúguǒ</u> )                                            |
| 13. zuòhǎo le   | to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished                |

## UNIT 8 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn, nín chū mén<br>le ba?                                                                                                     | I haven't seen you in a long time.<br>You have been away, I suppose?                                                                                                 |
| 2. Nín wèishénme gāng huílai yòu qù<br>le ne?<br>Wǒ zhèicì dào Guǎngzhōu qù shì<br>yīnwei wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode<br>péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái. | Why did you go again when you had<br>just come back from there?<br>This time I went to Guǎngzhōu<br>because I had a very good friend<br>coming there from Hong Kong. |
| 3. Wǒmen yǒu yìnián méi jiàn le.<br><br>Tā gǐng wǒ péi ta yìqǐ qù<br>lǚxíng.                                                                   | We had not seen each other for a<br>year.<br>She asked me to accompany her (in<br>her) travels.                                                                      |
| 4. Sānge yuè yǐqián tā hái bù<br>zhīdào néng bu néng lái.                                                                                      | Three months ago she didn't know<br>yet whether she would be able to<br>come or not.                                                                                 |
| 5. Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?                                                                                                              | What places did you go to?                                                                                                                                           |
| 6. Hángzhōu gēn Sūzhōu zhēn shì<br>piàoliang.                                                                                                  | Hángzhōu and Sūzhōu are really<br>beautiful.                                                                                                                         |
| 7. Yǒu jīhui wǒ yào zài qù yìcì.                                                                                                               | If I have the chance, I would like<br>to go again.                                                                                                                   |
| 8. Zhèixiē dìfang nǐ dōu qùguo le<br>ba?<br>Méi dōu qùguo.                                                                                     | You have gone to all those places,<br>I suppose?<br>I haven't been to all of them.                                                                                   |
| 9. huí guó                                                                                                                                     | to return to one's native country                                                                                                                                    |
| 10. huí jiā                                                                                                                                    | to come/go home                                                                                                                                                      |
| 11. huíqu                                                                                                                                      | to go back                                                                                                                                                           |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                   |                             |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| 12. rènao         | to be lively/bustling/noisy |
| 13. yǒu yìsi      | to be interesting           |
| 14. méi(yǒu) yìsi | to be uninteresting         |
| 15. suǒyǐ (suǒyì) | therefore, so               |

UNIT 1

REFERENCE LIST

- |                                                |                                                      |
|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. A: Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?          | What bus do you take to get to Ximending?            |
| B: Zuò Shíbalù.                                | Take Number 18.                                      |
| 2. A: Shíbalù chē duō bu duō?                  | Are there many Number 18 buses?                      |
| B: Bù hěn duō.                                 | Not very many.                                       |
| 3. A: Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?     | How much time is there between buses?                |
| B: Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.            | There's one every twenty minutes.                    |
| 4. C: Wǒ měige Xīngqīliù dōu qù kàn diànyǐng.  | I go to see a movie every Saturday.                  |
| 5. A: Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?       | What time is the last bus?                           |
| B: Shíyīdiǎn shífēn.                           | Eleven-ten.                                          |
| 6. D: Zhèbān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng?      | Does this bus go to Ximending?                       |
| E: Shì. Shàng chē ba!                          | Yes, Get on!                                         |
| 7. A: Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou, qǐng gāosong wǒ. | When we get to Ximending, please tell me.            |
| F: Hǎo.                                        | Okay.                                                |
| 8. A: Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīméndīng?            | How many more stops are there to (before) Ximending? |
| F: Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīméndīng.               | The next stop is Ximending.                          |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |           |                            |
|-----------|----------------------------|
| 9. shàng- | last, previous (something) |
| 10. tóu-  | first (something)          |

- |                    |                                                                   |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 11. gào su         | to tell, to inform (alternate pronunciation for <u>gào song</u> ) |
| 12. shǎo           | to be few                                                         |
| 13. xià chē        | to get off the bus; "Out, please!"                                |
| 14. yǒu(de) shíhou | sometimes                                                         |
| 15. chéng          | city                                                              |

## VOCABULARY

-bān	(counter for regularly scheduled trips of buses, planes, subways, trains, etc.)
chē	vehicle, bus, car
chéng	city
duō	to be many
-fēn	a minute
gàosong	to tell, to inform
gàosu	to tell, to inform
gé	to separate, to divide off
jǐlù chē	what number bus
měi-	every, each
shàng	to get on
shàng-	last, previous (something)
shǎo	to be few
tóu-	first (something)
xià	to get off
xià-	next (something)
xià chē	to get off the bus; "Out, please!"
Xīméndīng	(an area of Taipei)
yǒu(de) shíhou	sometimes
zhàn	a stop, a station
zuìhòu	last, final (something)
<u>(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)</u>	
Běihǎi Gōngyuán	(a famous park in Běijīng)
biéde shíhou	other times
Dōngjīng	Tokyo
fàng jià	to close for a holiday
hǎowán	to be fun (lit., "good for relaxing")
huì	will
sījī	driver of a hired vehicle
zǒu ba	let's go

## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò  
jǐlù chē?  
B: Zuò Shíbāilù.                      What bus do you take to get to  
Ximending?  
Take Number 18.
2. A: Shíbāilù chē duō bu duo?  
B: Bù hěn duō.                      Are there many Number 18 buses?  
Not very many.

Notes on Nos. 1-2

Xīméndīng literally means "West Gate dīng"--dīng being a Japanese term for "district." Xīméndīng is the area of Taipei which surrounds the former west gate of the city. Today the district includes many shops, department stores, and movie theaters.

Lù is the word for "route." The question jǐlù? asks for the route number of the bus.

Zuò, "to ride/to go by/to take [a conveyance]":\* Here zuò (literally, "to sit") means to go by some means of transportation which the passenger is inside of (e.g., car, plane, boat, train, bus, elevator--NOT a motor-cycle or a horse). In exchange 1, zuò is used as a main verb. It can also be used as a prepositional verb, as in

- Nǐ zěnmē qù?                      How are you going? (i.e., by what means of transportation)
- Wǒ zuò huǒchē qù.                      I am going by train.

Duō, "to be many/much," is an adjectival verb.\*\* There are several points to remember about duō:

a. Adjectival verbs are sometimes used before a noun to modify it (e.g., xīn zhuōzi, "new table"; dà fángzi, "big house"). However, when duō is used in this way, it must be modified, for example, by hěn or tài.

Tā mǎile hěn duō dōngxi.                      He bought a lot of things.

Běijīng jiēshang yǒu hěn duō cèsuǒ.                      There are many toilets on the streets of Běijīng.

b. Much more often, however, duō is used as the main verb of a sentence.

Nǐde shū zhēn duō!                      You really have a lot of books!

Jīntiān jiēshangde rén hěn duō.                      There are a lot of people out today.  
(literally, "on the streets today")

---

\*Zuò appeared earlier in Zuò diàntī dào èrlóu, "Take the elevator to the second floor."

\*\*Adjectival verbs are one type of STATE verb. See BIO, Unit 6.

c. Often it does not occur to students to use duō as the main verb of a sentence because in English they do not usually say "The students are many." They would say "There are many students," with "many" as an adjective preceding "students." Compare:

(There are	a lot of people	here.)
Zhèrde	rén hěn duō.	

(A lot of people	came.)
Láide	rén hěn duō.

NOTE: Shǎo, "to be few," is used in almost the same ways as duō. (See Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary.)

3. A: Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān chē?      How much time is there between buses?  
 B: Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng yǒu yìbān.      There's one every twenty minutes.

Notes on No. 3

Měi- is the word for "each," "every."

Gé is a verb meaning "to separate," "to divide." It is used for intervals of time between regularly occurring events (e.g., "every half hour"). In exchange 3, gé refers to the length of time between buses.

měi	gé	duōshao	shíhou	"(every) how often"
(every	divide-off [interval]	how much	time)	

The first sentence could also be translated as "How often is there a bus?" or "How often do the buses run?"

Yìbān chē: The counter -bān is used for scheduled trips, or runs, of a vehicle. Yìbān chē is one bus run.

Èrshífēn zhōng: The counter -fēn, for minutes, is usually followed by zhōng, "clock." (Zhōng means "o'clock" in telling time.) "One minute" is yìfēn zhōng.



Měi	gé	èrshifēn zhōng	yǒu	yìbān	chē.
(each	interval	twenty minutes	there is	one [run]	bus)

"There's a bus every twenty minutes."

4. C: Wǒ měige Xīngqīliù dōu qù kàn diànyǐng. I go to see a movie every Saturday.

Notes on No. 4

Měige: When used with a noun, měi- acts as a specifier and must be followed by a counter or a noun that does not require a counter.

měi(ge) rén	every person
měizhāng zhuōzi	every table
měitiān	every day

Dōu, "all": Here the adverb dōu implies "each and every," or "without exception"--"every Saturday, without exception." When the subject of a sentence is specified by měi-, the following verb is usually modified by the adverb dōu.

5. A: Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng? What time is the last bus?  
 B: Shíyīdiǎn shífēn. Eleven-ten.

Note on No. 5

Zuìhòu yìbān chē: Zuì is the word for "most," or "-est." Zuìhòu means "latest," or "last." Note the order in which the elements of this phrase appear:

zuìhòu	yì	-bān	chē
(last	one	run	bus)

"the last bus"

Both the number and the counter are required in this phrase.

Compare:

tóu	yì	-bān	chē	"the first bus"
xià	yì	-bān	chē	"the next bus"
shàng	yì	-bān	chē	"the last (previous) bus"

(See Note on No. 8 and Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary for xià-, "next"; shàng-, "last," "previous"; and tóu-, "first.")

6. D: Zhèbān chē shì bu shì qù Xīméndīng? Does this bus go to Ximending?  
 E: Shì. Shàng chē ba! Yes. Get on!

Notes on No. 6

Shì bu shì qù, "does it go to":\* The use of shì bu shì qù rather than qù bu qu in this sentence implies that the speaker has an idea that the bus does go to Ximending and wants to make sure. (Zhèbān chē qù bu qu Xīméndīng? would also be correct.)

Qù Xīméndīng, "go to Ximending": The destination directly follows the main verb qù. You now know two ways to indicate destination:

Wǒ dào Xīméndīng qù. I am going to Ximending.

Wǒ qù Xīméndīng.

The two forms are equally widely used.

Shàng chē: This verb has several meanings. In the Directions Module, the meaning was "to go up" in Shàng lóu, yòubian jiù shì mài dìtúde. In this exchange, the meaning of shàng is "to get on/in [a vehicle]."

---

\*For a discussion of the use of shì bu shì before another verb to form a question, see MON, Unit 5, notes on No. 8.

7. A: Dào Xīméndǐngde shíhou,  
qǐng gāosong wǒ. When we get to Ximending, please  
tell me.  
F: Hǎo. Okay.

Note on No. 7

Dào Xīméndǐngde shíhou means "when we arrive in Ximending." If you want to say, in Chinese, "when [something happens]," add -de shíhou to the phrase which names the happening.

In English, "when" can mean either "during the same time" (e.g., "when I was a student") or "immediately after" (e.g., "when the light turns green"). In Chinese, however, two different expressions are used for the two meanings: -de shíhou for "at the same time" and yǐhòu for "immediately after."

Wǒ zài Xiānggǎngde shíhou  
hěn xǐhuan qù kàn diànyǐng. When [i.e., while] I was in Hong  
Kong, I liked to go to the movies  
very much.

Wǒ dào le Táiběi yǐhòu,  
mǎile hěn duō Zhōngwén shū. When [i.e., after] I got to Taipei,  
I bought a lot of Chinese books.

8. A: Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào  
Xīméndǐng? How many more stops are there to  
(before) Ximending?  
F: Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīméndǐng. The next stop is Ximending.

Note on No. 8

Xià yízhàn: Here xià means "the next." It is a specifier. Xià is usually followed by a numeral or a counter, as in the following examples:

xiàge yuè next month

xià yìbān chē the next bus

The phrase xià yízhàn contains no counter because -zhàn, like -nián and -tiān, is not used with a counter.

9. shàng-	last, previous (something)
10. tóu-	first (something)
11. gào su	to tell (alternate pronunciation)
12. shǎo	to be few
13. xià chē	to get off the bus; "Out, please!"
14. yǒu (de) shíhòu	sometimes
15. chéng	city

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

The specifier shàng-, "last," "previous," is used in the same patterns as xià-.

shàngge yuè	last month
shàng yìbān chē	the previous bus

Tóu-, "first," literally "head": Let's contrast dì- and tóu-: Dì- has no meaning of its own. Its function is to make a cardinal number into an ordinal number: for example, sān, "three," becomes dìsān, "third," as in dìsānge mén, "the third door." Tóu- has a meaning of its own: "first," as in tóusānge mén, "the first three doors."

Tóu- is always followed by at least a number plus a counter (or a noun that does not require a counter).

tóuliǎngge rén	the first two people
tóusānběn	the first three volumes
tóusìtiān	the first four days

Notice that tóuliǎngge, "the first two," and dìèrge, "the second one," must use different words for "two," because

<u>tóuliǎngge</u>	(COUNTING)
<u>dìèrge</u>	(NOT COUNTING)

Tóuyige, "the first one," and dìyige, "the first one," are similar in meaning and often interchangeable.

Gào su, "to tell": Gàosong is the usual colloquial pronunciation in Běijīng speech. Gào su is the usual colloquial pronunciation in many other places in China, including Taiwan. The fact that, in a Taipei setting, the first speaker in exchange 7 uses gàosong tells you that he is almost certainly not a native of Taiwan.

Shǎo, "to be few": Most of the comments about duō in these Reference Notes (exchange 2) also apply to the adjectival verb shǎo. Most frequently, shǎo is used as the main verb of a sentence.

Wǒde qián bù shǎo.	I have quite a bit of money.
Zài Táiwān méiyǒu gōngzuòde rén hěn shǎo.	There are few people in Taiwan who do not have jobs.

One point deserves special attention: Although you may say hěn duō shū for "a lot of books," you may not say hěn shǎo shū. Hěn shǎo can rarely modify a noun which follows--and neither can tài shǎo, zhēn shǎo, and related expressions.

Xià chē, "to get off [a vehicle]," may be used to signal that you wish to get off--that this is your stop. The expression would be translated as "Out, please," or "Getting off, getting off," used by passengers in crowded buses and elevators.

Yǒu(de) shíhou, "sometimes," precedes the verb of a sentence, as other time expressions do.

Tā yǒude shíhou kàn Yīngwén      He sometimes reads English newspapers.  
bào.

Wǒ yǒu shíhou zuò Shíbālù      Sometimes I take the Number 18 bus.  
chē.

Originally, chéng meant "city wall." This early meaning still affects modern usage: you must say "going INTO the city," not just "to the city."

Tā jīntiān dào chénglǐtōu qù.      He is going to the city today.

## VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Modes of Transportation

bicycle	zìxíngchē [ <u>Běijīng</u> ]; jiǎotàchē [ <u>Taiwan</u> ]
boat	chuán
motorboat	qìtǐng
rowboat	huátǐng
sailboat	fānchuán
sampan	shānbǎn
bus	gōnggòng qìchē
coach (long-distance)	chángtú qìchē
car (automobile)	qìchē, chēzi, chē
helicopter	zhíshēngfēijī
horseback riding	qí mǎ
jeep	jípǔchē
motorcycle	mótuōchē
plane	fēijī
jet	pēnqìshì fēijī, pēnqìjī [ <u>PRC</u> ]; pēnshèshì fēijī, pēnshèjī [ <u>Taiwan</u> ]
subway	dìxiàtiě, dìtiě, dìxià huǒchē
taxi	chūzū qìchē, chūzū chē [ <u>PRC</u> ]; jìchéngchē [ <u>Taiwan</u> ]
train	huǒchē
trolley	diànchē
truck	kǎchē
walking	zǒu lù

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?<br/>jǐlù chē?<br/>(cue) hasn't yet<br/>(What bus do you take<br/>to get to Ximending?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē,<br/>tā hái méi gàosu wo.<br/>(He hasn't yet told me what<br/>bus to take to get to<br/>Ximending.)</p> |
| <p>2. Dào Wǔguānchù qù, zuò jǐlù chē?<br/>has already</p>                                                                                        | <p>Dào Wǔguānchù qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā<br/>yǐjīng gàosu wo le.</p>                                                                                     |
| <p>3. Dào Nánjīng Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē?<br/>did not</p>                                                                                           | <p>Dào Nánjīng Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē,<br/>tā hái méi gàosu wo.</p>                                                                                      |
| <p>4. Dào Zhōngshān Lù qù, zuò jǐlù<br/>chē? hasn't yet</p>                                                                                      | <p>Dào Zhōngshān Lù qù, zuò jǐlù chē,<br/>tā hái méi gàosu wo.</p>                                                                                    |
| <p>5. Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē?<br/>has already</p>                                                                                        | <p>Dào Xīméndīng qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā<br/>yǐjīng gàosu wo le.</p>                                                                                     |
| <p>6. Dào tā jiā qù, zuò jǐlù chē?<br/>hasn't yet</p>                                                                                            | <p>Dào tā jiā qù, zuò jǐlù chē, tā<br/>hái méi gàosu wo.</p>                                                                                          |
| <p>7. Dào cànshìchǎng qù, zuò jǐlù<br/>chē? did not</p>                                                                                          | <p>Dào cànshìchǎng qù, zuò jǐlù chē,<br/>tā hái méi gàosu wo.</p>                                                                                     |

B. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Zuò Shíbāwù chē.<br/>(Take the Number 18<br/>bus.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Qǐng ni gàosu wo, zuò Shíbāwù<br/>chē, keyi bu keyi?<br/>(Please tell me, would it be<br/>all right to take the Number<br/>18 bus?)</p> |
| <p>2. Zuò Yíwù chē.</p>                                                      | <p>Qǐng ni gàosu wo, zuò Yíwù chē, keyi<br/>bu keyi?</p>                                                                                               |
| <p>3. Zuò Shíwù chē.</p>                                                     | <p>Qǐng ni gàosu wo, zuò Shíwù chē,<br/>keyi bu keyi?</p>                                                                                              |
| <p>4. Zuò Liùwù chē.</p>                                                     | <p>Qǐng ni gàosu wo, zuò Liùwù chē,<br/>keyi bu keyi?</p>                                                                                              |
| <p>5. Zuò Wǔwù chē.</p>                                                      | <p>Qǐng ni gàosu wo, zuò Wǔwù chē,<br/>keyi bu keyi?</p>                                                                                               |

6. Zuò Qílù chē.

Qǐng ni gào su wo, zuò Qílù chē,  
ké yì bu keyì?

7. Zuò Shíèrlù chē.

Qǐng ni gào su wo, zuò Shíèrlù chē,  
ké yì bu keyì?

C. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Měi gé duōshao shíhou  
yǒu yìbān chē?  
(cue) èrshí fēn zhōng  
(How often is there a  
bus?)

You: Měi gé èrshí fēn zhōng yǒu  
yìbān chē.  
(There's a bus every twenty  
minutes.)

2. Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān  
chē? shí fēn zhōng

Měi gé shí fēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

3. Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān  
chē? wǔ fēn zhōng

Měi gé wǔ fēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

4. Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān  
chē? bā fēn zhōng

Měi gé bā fēn zhōng yǒu yìbān chē.

5. Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān  
chē? èrshí fēn zhōng

Měi gé èrshí fēn zhōng yǒu yìbān  
chē.

6. Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān  
chē? shíwǔ fēn zhōng

Měi gé shíwǔ fēn zhōng yǒu yìbān  
chē.

7. Měi gé duōshao shíhou yǒu yìbān  
chē? shíèr fēn zhōng

Měi gé shíèr fēn zhōng yǒu yìbān  
chē.



D. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Shíbálù chē duō bu duo?<br/>         duo?<br/>         (<u>cue</u>) èrshífēn zhōng<br/>         (Are there many Number<br/>         18 buses?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Bù shǎo. Měi gé èrshífēn zhōng<br/>         yǒu yìbān.<br/>         (Quite a few. There's one<br/>         every twenty minutes.)</p> |
| <p>2. Yí lù chē duō bu duo?<br/>         wǔfēn zhōng</p>                                                                                                                 | <p>Bù shǎo. Měi gé wǔfēn zhōng yǒu<br/>         yìbān.</p>                                                                                           |
| <p>3. Dào Táinán qùde chē duō bu duo?<br/>         wǔshífēn zhōng</p>                                                                                                    | <p>Bù shǎo. Měi gé wǔshífēn zhōng yǒu<br/>         yìbān.</p>                                                                                        |
| <p>4. Dào Jílóng qùde chē duō bu duo?<br/>         sìshífēn zhōng</p>                                                                                                    | <p>Bù shǎo. Měi gé sìshífēn zhōng yǒu<br/>         yìbān.</p>                                                                                        |
| <p>5. Shí lù chē duō bu duo?<br/>         shífēn zhōng</p>                                                                                                               | <p>Bù shǎo. Měi gé shífēn zhōng yǒu<br/>         yìbān.</p>                                                                                          |
| <p>6. Sān lù chē duō bu duo?<br/>         èrshiwǔfēn zhōng</p>                                                                                                           | <p>Bù shǎo. Měi gé èrshiwǔfēn zhōng<br/>         yǒu yìbān.</p>                                                                                      |
| <p>7. Èr lù chē duō bu duo?<br/>         shíwǔfēn zhōng</p>                                                                                                              | <p>Bù shǎo. Měi gé shíwǔfēn zhōng yǒu<br/>         yìbān.</p>                                                                                        |

E. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn<br/>         zhōng?<br/>         (<u>cue</u>) Táizhōng<br/>         (What time is that bus?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Qǐngwèn, dào Táizhōng qùde<br/>         nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?<br/>         (May I ask, what time is that<br/>         bus to Taizhong?)</p> |
| <p>2. Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?<br/>         Táinán</p>                                                                                   | <p>Qǐngwèn, dào Táinán qùde nèibān chē<br/>         shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?</p>                                                                                         |
| <p>3. Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?<br/>         Jílóng</p>                                                                                   | <p>Qǐngwèn, dào Jílóng qùde nèibān<br/>         chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?</p>                                                                                         |
| <p>4. Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?<br/>         Jiāyì</p>                                                                                    | <p>Qǐngwèn, dào Jiāyì qùde nèibān chē<br/>         shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?</p>                                                                                          |
| <p>5. Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?<br/>         Táiběi</p>                                                                                   | <p>Qǐngwèn, dào Táiběi qùde nèibān chē<br/>         shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?</p>                                                                                         |
| <p>6. Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?<br/>         Huālián</p>                                                                                  | <p>Qǐngwèn, dào Huālián qùde nèibān<br/>         chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?</p>                                                                                        |

7. Nèibān chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?  
Gāoxióng

Qǐngwèn, dào Gāoxióng qùde nèibān  
chē shì jǐdiǎn zhōng?

F. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu  
yìbān chē?  
(cue) 11:10  
(Is this the last bus?)

You: Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì  
shíyīdiǎn shífēn.  
(No. The last bus is at 11:10.)

2. Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?  
11:30

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì  
shíyīdiǎn bàn.

3. Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?  
12:00

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì  
shíèrdiǎn.

4. Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?  
11:40

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì  
shíyīdiǎn sìshífēn.

5. Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?  
12:10

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì  
shíèrdiǎn shífēn.

6. Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?  
11:00

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì  
shíyīdiǎn.

7. Zhè shì bu shì zuìhòu yìbān chē?  
10:50

Bú shì. Zuìhòu yìbān chē shì  
shídiǎn wǔshífēn.

G. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Zhèibān chē dào  
Xīméndīng qù ma?  
(Does this bus go to  
Ximending?)

You: Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù  
Xīméndīng?  
(Does this bus go to Ximending?)

2. Zhèibān chē dào Zhōngshān Běilù  
qù ma?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Zhōngshān  
Běilù?

3. Zhèibān chē dào Zhōnghuá Lù qù  
ma?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Zhōnghuá  
Lù?

4. Zhèibān chē dào Zìyóu Lù qù ma?

Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Zìyóu Lù?

5. Zhèibān chē dào Rénài Lù qù ma?
6. Zhèibān chē dào Nánjīng Dōnglù qù ma?
7. Zhèibān chē dào Héping Xīlù qù ma?

- Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Rénài Lù?
- Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Nánjīng Dōnglù?
- Zhèibān chē shì bu shì qù Héping Xīlù?

H. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Tā xià chē le.  
(cue) Xīméndīng  
(He got off the bus.)  
OR Tā xià chē.  
(cue) Xīméndīng  
(He is getting off the bus.)

- You: Tā shì zài Xīméndīng xiàde chē.  
(He got off the bus at Ximending.)
- Tā zài Xīméndīng xià chē.  
(He is getting off the bus at Ximending.)

2. Tā shàng chē le.  
Zhōngshān Běilù
3. Tā shàng chē. Héping Dōnglù
4. Tā xià chē le. Mínhēng Lù
5. Tā shàng chē le. Rénài Lù
6. Tā xià chē. Zhōnghuá Lù

- Tā shì zài Zhōngshān Běilù shàngde chē.
- Tā zài Héping Dōnglù shàng chē.
- Tā shì zài Mínhēng Lù xiàde chē.
- Tā shì zài Rénài Lù shàngde chē.
- Tā zài Zhōnghuá Lù xià chē.

I. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Dào Xīméndīng qǐng gào su wo.  
(cue) shíhou  
(When we GET TO Ximending, please tell me.)
2. Dào Zhōngshān Běilù qǐng gào su wo.  
yǐqián
3. Dào Nánjīng Dōnglù qǐng gào su wo.  
shíhou

- You: Dào Xīméndīngde shíhou qǐng gào su wo.  
(When we get to XIMENDING, please tell me.)
- Dào Zhōngshān Běilù yǐqián qǐng gào su wo.
- Dào Nánjīng Dōnglùde shíhou qǐng gào su wo.

- |                                             |                                           |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 4. Dào Rénài Lù qǐng gàosu wo.<br>yǐqián    | Dào Rénài Lù yǐqián qǐng gàosu wo.        |
| 5. Dào Mínguán Lù qǐng gàosu wo.<br>shíhou  | Dào Mínguán Lùde shíhou qǐng gàosu<br>wo. |
| 6. Dào Héping Xīlù qǐng gàosu wo.<br>yǐqián | Dào Héping Xīlù yǐqián qǐng gàosu<br>wo.  |
| 7. Dào Zìyóu Lù qǐng gàosu wo.<br>shíhou    | Dào Zìyóu Lùde shíhou qǐng gàosu<br>wo.   |

J. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào<br>Xīméndǐng?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) xià<br>(How many more stops are<br>there to [before]<br>Ximending?) | <u>You</u> : Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīméndǐng.<br>(The next stop is Ximending.)           |
| OR Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào<br>Xīméndǐng?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) 3<br>(How many more stops<br>are there to [before]<br>Ximending?)                    | Hái yǒu sānzhàn jiù shì<br>Xīméndǐng.<br>(Three more stops, and that's<br>Ximending.) |
| 2. Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Zhōnghuá Lù?<br>xià                                                                                                  | Xià yízhàn jiù shì Zhōnghuá Lù.                                                       |
| 3. Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Nánjīng<br>Dōnglù? 2                                                                                                 | Hái yǒu liǎngzhàn jiù shì Nánjīng<br>Dōnglù.                                          |
| 4. Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Xīnshēng<br>Nánlù? xià                                                                                               | Xià yízhàn jiù shì Xīnshēng Nánlù.                                                    |
| 5. Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Zìyóu Lù?<br>2                                                                                                       | Hái yǒu liǎngzhàn jiù shì Zìyóu Lù.                                                   |
| 6. Hái yǒu jǐzhàn dào Míshēng Lù?<br>xià                                                                                                   | Xià yízhàn jiù shì Míshēng Lù.                                                        |

K. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Tā dào Zhōngguo qù.  
(cue) nián  
(He goes to China.)

You: Tā měinián dōu dào Zhōngguo qù.  
(He goes to China every year.)

2. Tā kàn Zhōngguo diànyǐng.  
yuè

Tā měige yuè dōu kàn Zhōngguo  
diànyǐng.

3. Tā dào Niǔ Yuē qù. xīngqī

Tā měige xīngqī dōu dào Niǔ Yuē qù.

4. Tā dào xuéxiào lái. tiān

Tā měitiān dōu dào xuéxiào lái.

5. Tā mǎi Yīngwén zázhi.  
Xīngqīwǔ

Tā měige Xīngqīwǔ dōu mǎi Yīngwén  
zázhi.

6. Tā dào cāishichǎng qù.  
tiān

Tā měitiān dōu dào cāishichǎng qù.

7. Tā kàn bào. tiān

Tā měitiān dōu kàn bào.

## UNIT 2

### REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

- |                                            |                                                |
|--------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1. A: Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē? | Is there a direct bus to the exhibition hall?  |
| B: Méiyǒu.                                 | No.                                            |
| 2. A: Dào nàr qù, zuò jǐlù chē ya?         | What bus do you take to get there?             |
| B: Zuò Yīlù chē.                           | Take the Number 1 bus.                         |
| 3. B: Zuò dao Xīdān huàn chē.              | Take it to Xīdān and change buses.             |
| 4. A: Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?             | Where do we buy tickets?                       |
| B: Zài chēshang mǎi piào.                  | We buy tickets on the bus.                     |
| 5. B: Hǎo, xiànzài zǒu ba!                 | Okay, let's go now!                            |
| 6. A: Èi! Zánmen bú shì zuòguò zhàn le ba? | Hey! Haven't we gone past our stop?            |
| B: Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.     | Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop. |
| 7. * C: Láojià, Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr? | Excuse me, where is the Number 15 bus stop?    |
| D: Jiù zài nèige lùkǒurshang.              | It's (just) on that corner.                    |

#### ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY (not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                   |                                     |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 8. gōnggòng qìchē | public bus (local)                  |
| 9. -li            | in (locational ending)              |
| 10. -shang        | on                                  |
| 11. shàng bān     | to start work, to go to work        |
| 12. xià bān       | to get off from work, to leave work |

---

\*This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

## VOCABULARY

ba	(tone softener)
cái	then and only then, not until
gōnggòng qìchē	public bus (local)
-li	in (locational ending)
piào (yìzhāng)	ticket, coupon
qìchēzhàn	bus stop
-shang	on (locational ending)
shàng bān	to go to work, to start work
xià bān	to get off from work, to leave work
Xīdān	(a district in Běijīng)
zánmen	we (specifically includes the listener)
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	exhibition hall
zhídáchē	direct bus, nonstop bus
zuò dào	to ride to
zuòguò	to ride past

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

Āndìngmén	(a neighborhood in Běijīng)
bǐjiǎo	comparatively, relatively
dòngwuyuán	zoo
liǎngcì	two times, twice
Xiǎo (name)	Little (name) [familiar form of name among friends]
xióngmāo	panda
zhǎnlǎn	to exhibit
zhèicì	this time

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn yǒu meiyou zhídáchē? Is there a direct bus to the exhibition hall?  
 B: Méiyou. No.

Notes on No. 1

Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn is the topic of the first sentence in exchange 1.

Zhídáchē refers to a city bus in exchange 1, although the word is more properly used to refer to buses between cities.

Changed tones: You have now learned several three-syllable words in which the middle syllable changes tone in normal fast speech. These words and the changes you hear are

Jiānádà		Jiānádà
Xīméndǐng		Xīméndǐng
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	zhǎnlǎnguǎn	zhǎnlǎnguǎn
zhídáchē		zhídáchē

(For further discussion of this type of tone change, see Tone Changes in the P&R Summary.)

2. A: Dào nàr qù, zuò jǐlù chē ya? What bus do you take to get there?  
 B: Zuò Yīlù chē. Take the Number 1 bus.

Note on No. 2

Ya is a variant form of the marker a. If the word directly preceding the a ends in a vowel, the semivowel y or w may be inserted; the marker is then pronounced ya or wa. If the word directly preceding a ends in a consonant, that sound is carried forward as the initial sound of the marker: /((consonant sound)a/

Nǐ shi nǎrde rén /n/a?

Nǐ xìng Wáng /ng/a?

Nǐ hǎo /w/a?

Tā zhēn kuài /y/a!



3. B: Zuò dao Xidān huàn chē.                      Take it to Xidān and change buses.

Notes on No. 3

Zuò dao Xidān: In earlier exchanges, phrases consisting of dào and a place word were placed before the main verb in a sentence. In this exchange, you see that dào+place word can also be placed after the main verb. Dào is toneless when it follows the verb of a sentence.

Huàn is used in exchange 3 for "changing" from one bus to another. It was used in earlier modules for "changing" from one currency to another.

4. A: Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?                      Where do we buy tickets?  
B: Zài chēshang mǎi piào.                      We buy tickets on the bus.

Notes on No. 4

Although spelled zánmen, this word is actually pronounced zámen, and in everyday conversation even as zám. Both women and zánmen are translated as "we." Most speakers of Chinese outside Běijīng use only women.

Many Chinese from Běijīng use the pronoun women only when the person being spoken to is not included in the "we." To show that the person being spoken to IS included in the "we," zánmen is used.

For instance, if everyone in a room is Chinese, any one person could say to all of the others Zánmen dōu shì Zhōngguó rén, "All of us are Chinese." If an American then entered the room, someone might say to him Wōmen shì Zhōngguó rén, nǐ shì Měiguó rén, "We are Chinese, and you are American."

The phrase zài chēshang consists of the verb zài followed by the noun chē plus the locational ending -shang. Some verbs like zài must be followed by a place word or phrase (or by time words or phrases). But not all nouns which refer to things which occupy space can be used as place words. You must learn which words can function as place words and which cannot.

Zhèr, nàr, relative location words (zuǒbianr, dōngbianr, wàibianr, etc.), and names of cities and countries may be used as place words. In general, nouns which refer to buildings, institutions, organizations, parks, and other specific locations may be used as place words. Nouns which refer to vehicles, people, books, furniture, and other things that can be moved around are NOT considered place words. When a noun from this group is to be used in a phrase with zài, either a locational ending is added to the noun or the place word zhèr or nàr follows it.

Zài zhuōzishang yǒu hěnn duō shū.      There are many books on the table.

Tā zài nèige zhuōzi nàr niàn shū.      He studies at that table.

Locational endings: -shang, "on"; -li, "in"; -wài, "outside"; and -xià, "under," are locational endings.

Tā zài lóuxià mǎi dōngxi.      He is buying things downstairs.

Fàndiànli yǒu méiyǒu mǎi tángde?      Is there a place to buy candy in the hotel?

You have learned three generally equivalent ways to form place expressions: noun + locational ending; noun followed by relative location word; noun + de followed by relative location word.

Tā	zài	mén-		-wài		děng	ni.
Tā	zài	mén		wài-	-bianr	děng	ni.
Tā	zài	mén	-de	wài-	-bianr	děng	ni.

5. B: Hǎo, xiànzài zǒu ba!

Okay, let's go now!

Note on No. 5

Ba: You have seen the marker ba used in different situations at the ends of sentences. In each case, however, its effect was to soften the impact of whatever the speaker was saying. Here is a summary of the uses you have seen:

a. After a phrase which puts forth an opinion or guess, ba adds a questioning tone (BIO, Unit 2).

Tā dàgài bù lái le ba?

He's probably not coming after all, is he?

Nǐ shì Wèi Shàoxiào ba?

You must be Major Weiss.

b. After a statement which puts forth a course of action, ba softens the tone. Ba may be used at the end of a sentence with a meaning ranging anywhere from tentative and consulting to suggesting or advising to requesting or ordering. (The tone of ba sentences varies according to the person being spoken to, the speaker's tone of voice, and other words, such as qǐng, "please," in a sentence.) (MON, Unit 3)

Nǐ zǒu ba!	Leave! (ORDERING)
Nǐ hǎohāor xiǎngxiang ba!	You think it over carefully! (ADVISING)
Qǐng ba!	Please go ahead! (INVITING)
Zánmen zǒu ba.	Let's go. (SUGGESTING)
Wǒ mǎi dàde ba.	I guess I'll get the large one. (TENTATIVE AND CONSULTING)

There is no single way to translate this use of ba. In the examples above, you can see that when the subject is "you," ba goes untranslated; when the subject is "we," ba is translated as "let's"; and when the subject is "I," ba is translated as "I guess."

6. A: Èi! Zánmen bú shì zuòguò zhàn le ba?  
 B: Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.
- Hey! Haven't we gone past our stop?  
 Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.

Notes on No. 6

Bú shì: Below are some examples of affirmative questions and their negative counterparts (using bú shì). Notice that in the two negative examples shì means something like "to be the case that...."

Tā yǐjīng zǒu le ba?	Has he already gone?
Tā bú shì yǐjīng zǒu le ba?	Hasn't he already gone? (Isn't it the case that he has already gone?)
Tā zhù zai Shànghǎi ma?	Does she live in Shànghǎi?
Tā bú shì zhù zai Shànghǎi ma?	Doesn't she live in Shànghǎi? (Isn't it the case that she lives in Shànghǎi?)

Zuòguò le: To the main verb zuò, "to ride," "to take," the ending -guò is added to indicate the result of the action--"going past/too far." (The full verb guò means "to pass," "to cross.") The ending -guò may also be added to the verb zǒu, "to go," to indicate result.

Òu, nǐ zhǎo Nánwèi Hútong! Nǐ zǒuguò le! Nǐ děi wàng huí zǒu.	Oh, you are looking for Nánwèi Hútong. You have walked past it. You will have to go back.
------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Aspect marker ne: You have frequently seen an aspect marker used to indicate a CHANGE: completion le shows that an action or process has been carried out (Tā zǒu le, "He has left"); new situation le marks a change in the past, present, or future (Tāde dàyī pòle, "His coat is worn out"). In exchange 6, the aspect marker ne indicates the ABSENCE OF CHANGE. In this exchange, ne emphasizes that there has been no change in the situation. You may want to think of ne as the opposite of le.

The marker ne is used with ACTION and STATE verbs.

Tā xiànzài niàn shū ne.	He is studying now.
Tā zài zhèr ne.	He's here.
Zhèizhī bǐ hái kényi xiě ne.	This pen is still good (can still write).

Hái, "still," "yet": When this adverb is used, the sentence very often ends with the marker ne.

Míngtiān wǒ hái bù zǒu ne.	I'm not leaving tomorrow (yet). (i.e., I'll still be here tomorrow.)
Tā hái méi lái ne.	He hasn't come yet.

"Still" and "yet" may, however, be translated into Chinese with either hái or ne.

Tā hái méi lái.	He hasn't come yet.
Tā méi lái ne.	

Cái means "then and only then" or "not until then." It is used to talk about something that has happened or will happen later than expected.

Wǒmen míngtiān cái zǒu.	We don't leave until tomorrow.
-------------------------	--------------------------------

Sentences in which cái is used emphasize when something happened, rather than the fact that it happened. Therefore (shì)...-de, not le, is used to indicate completed action.

Tā (shì) bādiǎn zhōng cái lái.	He didn't come until eight o'clock.
Wǒ zuótiān cái dào.	I didn't arrive until yesterday.

Notice that the shì in the shì...-de construction may be omitted. Also, cái is placed AFTER a time word or phrase and BEFORE the verb.

You have learned three words for "then": jiù, zài, cái. Jiù is used for action taking place earlier than expected. Cái and zài imply that something happens later than expected. Cái and jiù are used in descriptions of completed or future action. Zài is used mostly for plans, suggestions, and commands--in reference to future actions.

Tā zuótiān jiù dào le.	He arrived yesterday (already).
Tā (shì) zuótiān cái lái.	He didn't come until yesterday.
Nǐ míngtiān zài zǒu ba!	Don't go until tomorrow!

Notice that, in the description of past events, most sentences containing jiù also contain the completion le marker.

7. C: Láojià, Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn      Excuse me. Where is the Number 15  
      zài nǎr?                                bus stop?  
D: Jiù zài nèige lùkǒurshang.      It's (just) on that corner.

Note on No. 7

Lùkǒurshang, literally "on the intersection": Lùkǒur means "road mouth," a crossroads or intersection. The word is a place-word expression and may follow zài with or without the locational ending -shang.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Dào Běijīng Zhǎnlǎnguǎn<br>yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) Mínzú Fāndiàn<br>(Is there a direct bus<br>to the Běijīng<br>Exhibition Hall?) | <u>You</u> : Dào Mínzú Fāndiàn yǒu meiyǒu<br>zhídáchē?<br>(Is there a direct bus to the<br>Nationalities Hotel?) |
| 2. Dào Mínzú Fāndiàn yǒu meiyǒu<br>zhídáchē? Sānlǐtún                                                                                                                | Dào Sānlǐtún yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?                                                                                |
| 3. Dào Sānlǐtún yǒu meiyǒu<br>zhídáchē? Xīdān                                                                                                                        | Dào Xīdān yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?                                                                                   |
| 4. Dào Xīdān yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?<br>Dōngdān Càishichǎng                                                                                                             | Dào Dōngdān Càishichǎng yǒu meiyǒu<br>zhídáchē?                                                                  |
| 5. Dào Dōngdān Càishichǎng yǒu<br>meiyǒu zhídáchē?<br>Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn                                                                                           | Dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn yǒu meiyǒu<br>zhídáchē?                                                                 |
| 6. Dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuàn yǒu<br>meiyǒu zhídáchē?<br>Jiānádà Wǔguānchù                                                                                             | Dào Jiānádà Wǔguānchù yǒu meiyǒu<br>zhídáchē?                                                                    |
| 7. Dào Jiānádà Wǔguānchù yǒu<br>meiyǒu zhídáchē?                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                  |

B. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Dào Běijīng Zhǎnlǎnguǎn<br>yǒu meiyǒu zhídáchē?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) Xīdān<br>(Is there a direct bus<br>to the Běijīng<br>Exhibition Hall?) | <u>You</u> : Méiyǒu, děi zài Xīdān huàn chē.<br>(There isn't. You have to<br>change buses at Xīdān.) |
| 2. Dào Sānlǐtún yǒu meiyǒu<br>zhídáchē? Dōngdān                                                                                                              | Méiyǒu, děi zài Dōngdān huàn chē.                                                                    |
| 3. Dào Guānghuá Lù yǒu meiyǒu<br>zhídáchē? tāmen nàr                                                                                                         | Méiyǒu, děi zài tāmen nàr huàn chē.                                                                  |

- |                                                                 |                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 4. Dào Dōngdān Diànyǐngyuán yǒu<br>meiyóu zhídáchē? Qiánmén     | Méiyóu, děi zài Qiánmén huàn chē.            |
| 5. Dào Jiānádà Wǔguānchù yǒu meiyóu<br>zhídáchē? Xīdān          | Méiyóu, děi zài Xīdān huàn chē.              |
| 6. Dào Qiánmén yǒu meiyóu zhídáchē?<br>Dōngdān                  | Méiyóu, děi zài Dōngdān huàn chē.            |
| 7. Dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yǒu meiyóu<br>zhídáchē? cāishichǎng nàr | Méiyóu, děi zài cāishichǎng nàr<br>huàn chē. |

C. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                      |                                                                             |                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : dào nàr qù<br>( <u>cue</u> ) jǐ<br>(to go there) |                                                                             | <u>You</u> : Dào nàr qù zuò jǐlù chē?<br>(What [number] bus do you take<br>to go there?)          |
| OR                                                                   | dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn qù<br>( <u>cue</u> ) 3<br>(to go to the exhibition<br>hall) | Dào zhǎnlǎnguǎn qù zuò Sānlù<br>chē.<br>(To go to the exhibition hall,<br>take the Number 3 bus.) |
| 2. dào Dōngdān qù                                                    | 3                                                                           | Dào Dōngdān qù zuò Sānlù chē.                                                                     |
| 3. dào nàr qù                                                        | jǐ                                                                          | Dào nàr qù zuò jǐlù chē?                                                                          |
| 4. dào Xīnhuá Shūdiàn qù                                             | 1                                                                           | Dào Xīnhuá Shūdiàn qù zuò Yīlù chē.                                                               |
| 5. dào Sānlǐtún qù                                                   | 5                                                                           | Dào Sānlǐtún qù zuò Wǔlù chē.                                                                     |
| 6. dào Dōngdān Cāishichǎng qù                                        | jǐ                                                                          | Dào Dōngdān Cāishichǎng qù zuò jǐlù<br>chē?                                                       |

D. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nín xiān zuò Yīlù chē,<br>zuò dao Xīdān huàn<br>chē.<br>(You first take the<br>Number 1 bus. Take<br>it to Xīdān and<br>change buses.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ xiān zuò Yīlù chē, zuò dao<br>Xīdān huàn chē, duì bu duì?<br>(I first take the Number 1 bus.<br>I take it to Xīdān and change<br>buses. Right?) |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- |                                                               |                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. Nín xiān zuò Sānlù chē, zuò dao Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē huàn chē. | Wǒ xiān zuò Sānlù chē, zuò dao Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē huàn chē, duì bu duì? |
| 3. Nín xiān zuò Liùlù chē, zuò dao Dōngdān huàn chē.          | Wǒ xiān zuò Liùlù chē, zuò dao Dōngdān huàn chē, duì bu duì?          |
| 4. Nín xiān zuò Wǔlù chē, zuò dao Qiánmén huàn chē.           | Wǒ xiān zuò Wǔlù chē, zuò dao Qiánmén huàn chē, duì bu duì?           |
| 5. Nín xiān zuò Shílù chē, zuò dao Sānlǐtún huàn chē.         | Wǒ xiān zuò Shílù chē, zuò dao Sānlǐtún huàn chē, duì bu duì?         |
| 6. Nín xiān zuò Qílù chē, zuò dao Rìtán Lù huàn chē.          | Wǒ xiān zuò Qílù chē, zuò dao Rìtán Lù huàn chē, duì bu duì?          |
| 7. Nín xiān zuò Shíèrlù chē, zuò dao Guānghuá Lù huàn chē.    | Wǒ xiān zuò Shíèrlù chē, zuò dao Guānghuá Lù huàn chē, duì bu duì?    |

E. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Dào nàr qù xiān zuò Sānlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē.<br>(To go there, first take the Number 3 bus; then take the Number 5 bus.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ xiān zuò Sānlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?<br>(I first take the Number 3 bus; then take the Number 5 bus. May I ask, where do I change buses?) |
| 2. Dào Zhǎnlǎnguǎn qù xiān zuò Yīlù chē, ránhòu zuò Sìlù chē.                                                                                      | Wǒ xiān zuò Yīlù chē, ránhòu zuò Sìlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?                                                                                                                   |
| 3. Dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù xiān zuò Èrlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē.                                                                                 | Wǒ xiān zuò Èrlù chē, ránhòu zuò Wǔlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?                                                                                                                   |
| 4. Dào Rìtán Lù qù xiān zuò Qílù chē, ránhòu zuò Sānlù chē.                                                                                        | Wǒ xiān zuò Qílù chē, ránhòu zuò Sānlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?                                                                                                                  |
| 5. Dào Sānlǐtún qù xiān zuò Liùlù chē, ránhòu zuò Èrlù chē.                                                                                        | Wǒ xiān zuò Liùlù chē, ránhòu zuò Èrlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?                                                                                                                  |
| 6. Dào Rìtán Lù qù xiān zuò Shílù chē, ránhòu zuò Qílù chē.                                                                                        | Wǒ xiān zuò Shílù chē, ránhòu zuò Qílù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?                                                                                                                  |



7. Dào Xīdān qù xiān zuò Shíwǔlù chē, ránhòu zuò Liùlù chē.

Wǒ xiān zuò Shíwǔlù chē, ránhòu zuò Liùlù chē. Qǐngwèn, zài nǎr huàn chē?

F. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào?  
piào?  
(cue) chēshang  
(Where do we buy tickets?)

You: Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài chēshang mǎi piào ma?  
(Where do we buy tickets? Do we buy them on the bus?)

2. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? zhèr

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài zhèr mǎi piào ma?

3. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? nǎr

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài nǎr mǎi piào ma?

4. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Dōngdān nǎr

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài Dōngdān nǎr mǎi piào ma?

5. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? chēshang

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài chēshang mǎi piào ma?

6. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? cǎishichǎng nǎr

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài cǎishichǎng nǎr mǎi piào ma?

7. Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Xīdān nǎr

Zánmen zài nǎr mǎi piào? Zài Xīdān nǎr mǎi piào ma?

G. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Zánmen jiǔdiǎn zhōng shàng bān.  
(We start work at nine o'clock.)

You: Zánmen jiǔdiǎn zhōng cái shàng bān.  
(We don't start work until nine o'clock.)

2. Wǒmen wǔdiǎnbàn xià bān.

Wǒmen wǔdiǎnbàn cái xià bān.

3. Wǒmen xià yízhàn xià chē.

Wǒmen xià yízhàn cái xià chē.

4. Yínháng jiǔdiǎn zhōng kāi mén.

Yínháng jiǔdiǎn zhōng cái kāi mén.

5. Wǒmen xià yízhàn huàn chē.

Wǒmen xià yízhàn cái huàn chē.

6. Tāmen liùdiǎn zhōng xià bān. Tāmen liùdiǎn zhōng cái xià bān.  
7. Tāmen shídiǎn zhōng shàng bān. Tāmen shídiǎn zhōng cái shàng bān.

H. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Nánjīng Dōnglù dào le ma?  
(cue) hái méi ne  
(Have we reached Nánjīng Dōnglù?)  
OR Nánjīng Dōnglù dào le ma?  
(cue) dào le  
(Have we reached Nánjīng Dōnglù?)  
You: Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.  
(Not yet. We don't get off until the next stop.)  
Dào le. Wǒmen zài zhèr xià chē.  
(We have already arrived. We get off here.)
2. Zhōnghuá Lù dào le ma? hái méi ne Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.  
hái méi ne
3. Dàlǐ Jiē dào le ma? dào le Dào le. Wǒmen zài zhèr xià chē.
4. Zhōngshān Běilù dào le ma? hái méi ne Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.  
hái méi ne
5. Héping Xīlù dào le ma? dào le Dào le. Wǒmen zài zhèr xià chē.  
dào le
6. Jílóng Lù dào le ma? hái méi ne Hái méi ne. Xià yízhàn cái xià chē.  
hái méi ne

I. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Qǐngwèn Shíwǔlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr?  
(cue) nèige lùkǒurshang  
(May I ask, where is the Number 15 bus stop?)  
You: Jiù zài nèige lùkǒurshang.  
(It's [just] on that corner.)
2. Qǐngwèn Shísīlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr? nèige dàlóu nàr. Jiù zài nèige dàlóu nàr.

3. Qǐngwèn Liùlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr? lùde nèibian Jiù zài lùde nèibian.
4. Qǐngwèn, Yīlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr? nèige yínháng qiánbian Jiù zài nèige yínháng qiánbian.
5. Qǐngwèn, Sānlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr? nèige shāngdiàn nàr. Jiù zài nèige shāngdiàn nàr.
6. Qǐngwèn, Qīlù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr? cāishichāng qiánbian Jiù zài nèige cāishichāng qiánbian.
7. Qǐngwèn, Shílù qìchēzhàn zài nǎr? nèige diànyǐngyuàn qiánbian Jiù zài nèige diànyǐngyuàn qiánbian.

J. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái?  
Tā jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái ma?  
(cue) 8 o'clock  
(What time is he coming?  
Is he coming at nine o'clock?)
- OR Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái?  
Tā jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái ma?  
(cue) 10 o'clock  
(What time is he coming?  
Is he coming at nine o'clock?)
- You: Tā shuō tā bādiǎn zhōng jiù lái.  
lái.  
(He says he is coming at eight o'clock.)
- Tā shuō tā shídiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.  
(He says he isn't coming until ten o'clock.)
2. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā sìdiǎn zhōng lái ma? 5 o'clock Tā shuō tā wǔdiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.
3. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā yīdiǎn zhōng lái ma? 12 o'clock Tā shuō tā shíèrdiǎn zhōng jiù lái.
4. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā bādiǎn zhōng lái ma? 7 o'clock Tā shuō tā qīdiǎn zhōng jiù lái.
5. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā liùdiǎn zhōng lái ma? 8 o'clock Tā shuō tā bādiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.
6. Tā jǐdiǎn zhōng lái? Tā shídiǎn zhōng lái ma? 11 o'clock Tā shuō tā shíyīdiǎn zhōng cái lái ne.

UNIT 3

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

- |                                                          |                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. A: Ài, jìchéngchē!                                    | Hey, taxi!                                                                              |
| B: Nǐ dào nǎlǐ?                                          | Where are you going?                                                                    |
| A: Dào huǒchēzhān.                                       | To the train station.                                                                   |
| 2. * B: Zhǐ yǒu zhè yíjiàn xíngli<br>ma?                 | Is there only this one piece of<br>luggage?                                             |
| A: Shì.                                                  | Yes.                                                                                    |
| 3. * B: Wǒ bǎ xíngli fàng zai<br>qiánbian.               | I'll put the suitcase in front.                                                         |
| 4. A: Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!                              | You are driving too fast!                                                               |
| 5. C: Tā kāi chē, kāide bú kuài.                         | He doesn't drive fast.                                                                  |
| 6. A: Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān, láiidejí.                       | We have time. We can make it in<br>time.                                                |
| 7. A: Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi.                               | Please drive a little slower.                                                           |
| 8.** A: Bié kāi nàme kuài!                               | Don't drive so fast!                                                                    |
| 9. B: Zhè shì nǐnde xíngli.                              | Here is your suitcase.                                                                  |
| A: Xièxie. Duōshao qián?                                 | Thank you. How much is it [the<br>fare]?                                                |
| B: Èrshíqīkuài.                                          | Twenty-seven dollars.                                                                   |
| A: Zhè shì sānshíkuài, bú yòng<br>zhǎo le.               | Here's thirty dollars. Keep the<br>change. (literally, "No need<br>to give me change.") |
| 10. A: Qǐng nǐ zài qiánbian nèige<br>yínháng tíng yíxià. | Please stop at that bank up ahead<br>for a moment.                                      |
| B: Hǎo. Wǒ bǎ chē tíng zai<br>nèibian děng nǐn.          | Okay. I'll park the car over<br>there and wait for you.                                 |

---

\* This exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only.

\*\* This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                 |                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| 11. chūzū qìchē | taxi (PRC)                      |
| 12. lái bù jí   | can't make it in time           |
| 13. qìchē       | car, motor vehicle              |
| 14. zhè me      | so, to this extent, in this way |
| 15. zè nà me    | so, to this extent, in this way |



Shànghǎi-made auto in Guǎngzhōu, 1978

## VOCABULARY

bǎ	(prepositional verb which indicates the direct object)
bié	don't
bú yòng	no need to
chūzū qìchē	taxi (PRC)
fàng	to put
huǒchēzhàn	train station
-jiàn	(counter for items or articles such as suitcases and clothing)
jìchéngchē	taxi (Taipei)
kāi	to drive (a vehicle)
kuài	to be fast
lǎibují	can't make it in time
lǎidejí	can make it in time
mǎn	to be slow
nàme	so, to that extent, in that way
qìchē	car, motor vehicle
shíjiān	time
tíng	to stop, to park
xíngli (yíjiàn)	luggage, suitcase
yíxià	a short amount of time
zènme	so, to this extent, in this way
zhème	so, to this extent, in this way
(introduced on C-2 tape)	
chī fàn	to have a meal
jìnliàng	to exert all one's effort, to do one's best to

Lǎo (name)

Old (name) [familiar nickname for  
an older person among close  
friends]

mótuōchē

motorcycle

náchuqu

to take (something) out

sòng

to see someone off, to escort someone  
to a train station, airport, bus  
depot, or pier

(introduced in Communication Game)

Zhèng hǎo.

Right on time.

REFERENCE NOTES

- |                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A: Ài, jìchéngchē! | Hey, taxi!            |
| B: Nǐ dào nǎli?       | Where are you going?  |
| A: Dào huǒchēzhàn.    | To the train station. |

Note on No. 1

Nǐ dào nǎli? This expression, like the English "Where to?" is not a full sentence. The taxi driver is using a shortened form of Nǐ dào nǎli qù?

- |                                          |                                             |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 2. B: Zhǐ yǒu zhè yíjiàn xíngli<br>ma?   | Is there only this one piece of<br>luggage? |
| A: Shì.                                  | Yes.                                        |
| 3. B: Wǒ bǎ xíngli fàng zai<br>qiánbian. | I'll put the suitcase in front.             |

Notes on Nos. 2-3

Zhè yíjiàn xíngli: -jiàn is the counter for xíngli.

Bǎ is a prepositional verb which often cannot be directly translated into English. Originally, as a full verb, bǎ meant "to hold something with one's hands." Today bǎ is usually used as a prepositional verb which brings the direct object to the front of the sentence, before the main verb. In some cases, bǎ may be translated as "take."

Tā bǎ zhèiběn shū fàng zai zhuōzishang.	He put the book on the table. (He took the book and put it on the table.)
--------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------

But, in many cases, the meaning of "take" does not correspond to the function of bǎ in the sentence.

Bǎ may be used with many types of objects, concrete and abstract. As a prepositional verb, bǎ shows that its object (the noun which follows) is the direct object in the sentence, even though it does not follow the main verb.

Tā mài tāde qìchē le.	He sold his car.
Tā bǎ tāde qìchē mài le.	

The next questions are "Why use bǎ?" and "When is bǎ used?" On the next page are some basic rules for using bǎ.



a. The object in a bǎ phrase must be a particular known thing. This rule follows the general pattern in Chinese of an object preceding the verb, in topic position or in a bǎ phrase, being specific.\* The object in a bǎ phrase should be translated by the English definite article "the" or by other words that indicate definiteness, such as "that" and "my."

Nǐ yǒu <u>xíngli</u> ma?	Do you have <u>any</u> luggage?
Yǒu. Zhǐ yǒu <u>zhè yíjiàn</u> .	Yes. I have only <u>this one piece</u> .
Hǎo. Wǒ bǎ <u>xíngli</u> fàngzai <u>qiánbian</u> .	Okay. I will put <u>the suitcase</u> in front.

b. The object of a bǎ phrase must be at the disposal of the subject before the action begins. Thus the object of kànjian, "to see," cannot be used with bǎ, nor can the object of mǎi, "to buy."

Wǒ mǎile <u>nèiběn</u> shū.	I bought the book.
Wǒ <u>bǎ</u> <u>nèiběn</u> shū mǎi le.	I sold the book.

c. Fàng zai qiánbian: The verb in a bǎ sentence is usually a transitive ACTION verb. An action verb refers to an activity that can be done voluntarily, either physically (mài, "to sell") or mentally (niàn, "to study"). Contrast this with a state verb, which refers to a quality or condition that the subject has no control over.

For instance, you can decide to study or to learn something, so xué is an action verb. But you cannot decide to know something, so zhīdao is a state verb. Although some state verbs, like zhīdao and xǐhuan, are transitive, the objects of these verbs cannot be put in a bǎ phrase because these verbs are not action verbs.

d. A bǎ sentence does not end with only a verb of one syllable. Either the verb has several syllables or a phrase follows the verb. In the final sentence of exchange 3, the action verb fàng is followed by zai and the destination qiánbian.

4. A: Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!                      You are driving too fast!

Notes on No. 4

-de: To describe how action is performed, the marker -de is added to the verb describing the action, and that verb is followed by an adjectival verb which expresses the MANNER in which the action takes place.

---

\*An object which follows the verb is nonspecific unless marked as specific with zhèi or nèi.

Cultural information: Taxi drivers are not offended by comments about their driving such as the exclamation in exchange 4. If ignored, a request to slow down should be repeated.

5. C: Tā kāi chē, kāide bú kuài. He doesn't drive fast.

Notes on No. 5

Verb, object, and the description of manner: If an action verb with a direct object is to be described in terms of how the action is done, use the following pattern.

Tā	shuō	Zhōngguo huà	shuō -de	tài hěn bú	màn.
(he	speak	Chinese	speak	too very not	slow)

"He speaks Chinese too/very/not slowly."

Notice that the main verb and direct object occur first; then the main verb is repeated, followed by -de and the description of manner. Compare the pattern above with the pattern you learned in the Biographic Information Module, Unit 8: Wǒ nián Yīngwén niǎnle liùnián, "I studied English for six years."

The main verb is repeated when BOTH the direct object and a duration phrase or a description of manner MUST follow the verb directly. In such a case, Chinese handles this post-verb "traffic jam" by making a topic out of the more general information (what is being done): the verb and direct object. The more specific information about how the action is done becomes the comment. A literal translation of the pattern example above is "As for (the way) he speaks Chinese, (he) speaks too/very/not slowly."

A special point to observe: In English, we may say "He doesn't speak Chinese slowly," putting the negative word before "speak." In Chinese, the negation must be placed directly in front of the word that is referred to (in the example, màn, "slow"--not saying that he doesn't speak, but saying that his speech is not slow).

Linguists have pointed out the potentially comical effect of using English word order for sentences in Chinese with manner descriptions.

If you were to use English word order to say "I can't speak Chinese very well," Wǒ bú huì shuō Zhōngguó huà hěn hǎo, your sentence would mean, literally, "(The fact that) I can't speak Chinese is very good." The right way to say "I can't speak Chinese very well" is Wǒ shuō Zhōngguó huà shuōde bú tài hǎo.

6. A: Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān, láiidejí. We have time. We can make it in time.
7. A: Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi. Please drive a little slower.

Notes on Nos. 6-7

Shíjiān: You now know two words for "time": shíhou and shíjiān. Shíjiān is used for an amount of time. Shíhou is usually used for a point or period in time when something happens.

Láidejí is an idiom meaning "able to make it on time [to do something]." The negative, "not able to make it on time," is láibují. (See the Meeting Module for additional discussion of such idioms.)

Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi, "Please drive a little slower": In the notes on exchange 5, you learned a pattern for describing manner: verb + -de + adjectival verb. In this sentence, however, the adjectival verb màn + yìdiǎn precede the verb kāi. When the adjectival verbs màn, kuài, zǎo, and wǎn are followed by yìdiǎn, the phrases thus formed may either precede or follow the verb of the sentence.

Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi.	Please drive a little slower.
Qǐng kāi màn yìdiǎn.	
Qǐng kuài yìdiǎn kāi.	Please drive a little faster.
Qǐng kāi kuài yìdiǎn.	
Qǐng ni zǎo yìdiǎn lái.	Please come a little earlier.
Qǐng ni lái zǎo yìdiǎn.	
Qǐng ni wǎn yìdiǎn lái.	Please come a little later.
Qǐng ni lái wǎn yìdiǎn.	

Many adjectival verbs + yìdiǎn must follow the sentence verb.

Xiě xiǎo yìdiǎn.	Write it a little smaller.
Xiě dà yìdiǎn.	Write it a little bigger.
Zuò hǎo yìdiǎn.	Do it a little better.

The marker -de is optional, and usually omitted, before adjectival verb + yìdiǎn phrases.

8. A: Bié kāi nàme kuài! Don't drive so fast!

Note on No. 8

Here you see a third way to describe the performance of an action.

First, you saw a straight description:

Nǐ kāide tài kuài le!	You are driving too fast!
OR	
Tā niàn shū niànde bú cuò.	She is doing pretty well in her studies.

Then, you saw a command in which an adjectival verb + yìdiǎn phrase could be placed either before or after the main sentence verb:

Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi.	Please drive a little slower.
Qǐng kāi màn yìdiǎn.	

Now, in Bié kāi nàme kuài, you see a negative command. The modifying adjectival verb follows the main verb. The marker -de is optional, and usually omitted, as long as the adjectival verb is preceded by nàme or zhème (zènme).

Bié zǒu nàme màn le!	Quit walking so slowly!
Bié qǐlai zènme wǎn!	Don't get up so late!
Nǐ zǒu nàme màn, zánmen jiu láibují le!	If you walk so slowly, we won't make it in time!

- |                                         |                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9. B: Zhè shì nínde xíngli.             | Here is your suitcase.                                                            |
| A: Xièxie. Duōshao qián?                | Thank you. How much is it [the fare]?                                             |
| B: Èrshiqīkuài.                         | Twenty-seven dollars.                                                             |
| A: Zhè shì sānshikuài, bú yòng zhǎo le. | Here's thirty dollars. Keep the change. (literally, "No need to give me change.") |

Notes on No. 9

Èrshiqīkuài: This money phrase does not contain the word qián because the counter kuài can stand alone if the reference could clearly be only to money. Other counters for money, such as máo and fēn, usually require the addition of qián.

Bú yòng zhǎo le: Bú yòng is an idiom meaning "no need to." A more literal translation of the sentence is "No need to give me change." Nǐ bú yòng kāi nàme kuài would be translated as "There's no need for you to drive that fast."\*

10. A: Qǐng ni zài qiánbian nèige yínháng tíng yíxià. Please stop at that bank up ahead for a moment.  
B: Hǎo. Wǒ bǎ chē tíng zai nèibian děng nín. Okay. I'll park the car over there and wait for you.

Note on No. 10

Yíxià, "awhile," is used to indicate a short, indefinite amount of time. The use of this word communicates indefiniteness, just as reduplicating the verb would have done (tíngyítíng). The first speaker in this exchange does not commit himself to an exact length of time.

---

\*The literal meaning of the verb yòng is "to use."

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                               |                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nǐ kāide tài kuài le.<br/>(cue) chē<br/>(You are driving too fast.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le.<br/>(You are driving too fast.)</p> |
| <p>2. Tā tíngde tài kuài le. chē</p>                                                          | <p>Tā tíng chē tíngde tài kuài le.</p>                                           |
| <p>3. Nǐ kànde tài màn le. shū</p>                                                            | <p>Nǐ kàn shū kànde tài màn le.</p>                                              |
| <p>4. Tā shuōde tài kuài le.<br/>Yīngwén</p>                                                  | <p>Tā shuō Yīngwén shuōde tài kuài le.</p>                                       |
| <p>5. Nǐ xuéde tài màn le.<br/>Zhōngwén</p>                                                   | <p>Nǐ xué Zhōngwén xuéde tài màn le.</p>                                         |
| <p>6. Tā niànde tài kuài le.<br/>zhèngzhixué</p>                                              | <p>Tā niàn zhèngzhixué niànde tài kuài le.</p>                                   |
| <p>7. Nǐ kànde tài màn le. bào</p>                                                            | <p>Nǐ kàn bào kànde tài màn le.</p>                                              |

B. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                       |                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Qǐng ni màn kāi.<br/>(Please drive slowly.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn kāi.<br/>(Please drive a little slower.)</p> |
| <p>2. Qǐng ni màn zǒu.</p>                                            | <p>Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn zǒu.</p>                                                 |
| <p>3. Qǐng ni màn shuō.</p>                                           | <p>Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn shuō.</p>                                                |
| <p>4. Qǐng ni kuài shuō.</p>                                          | <p>Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn shuō.</p>                                               |
| <p>5. Qǐng ni màn xià chē.</p>                                        | <p>Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn xià chē.</p>                                             |
| <p>6. Qǐng ni kuài qù.</p>                                            | <p>Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn qù.</p>                                                 |
| <p>7. Qǐng ni kuài shàng chē.</p>                                     | <p>Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn shàng chē.</p>                                          |

C. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nǐ kāi chē, kāide tài kuài le.<br/>(You are driving too fast.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Nǐ kāi chē kàide tài kuài le.<br/>Qǐng nǐ màn yìdiǎn kāi.<br/>(You are driving too fast.<br/>Please drive a little slower.)</p> |
| <p>2. Nǐ kàn shū, kànde tài màn le.</p>                                                  | <p>Nǐ kàn shū, kànde tài màn le. Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn kàn.</p>                                                                                  |
| <p>3. Nǐ kàn bào kànde tài màn le.</p>                                                   | <p>Nǐ kàn bào kànde tài màn le. Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn kàn.</p>                                                                                   |
| <p>4. Nǐ shuō Yīngwén shuōde tài kuài le.</p>                                            | <p>Nǐ shuō Yīngwén shuōde tài kuài le. Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn shuō.</p>                                                                            |
| <p>5. Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le.</p>                                                  | <p>Nǐ kāi chē kāide tài kuài le. Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn kāi.</p>                                                                                   |
| <p>6. Nǐ mài piào màide tài màn le.</p>                                                  | <p>Nǐ mài piào màide tài màn le. Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn mài.</p>                                                                                  |
| <p>7. Nǐ shuō Zhōngwén shuōde tài màn le.</p>                                            | <p>Nǐ shuō Zhōngwén shuōde tài màn le. Qǐng ni kuài yìdiǎn shuō.</p>                                                                           |

D. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wǒmen yǒu shífēn zhōng, láiidejí láiibují?<br/>(<u>cue</u>) tài yuǎn<br/>(We have ten minutes.<br/>Can we make it in time?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Tài yuǎn. Jiù yǒu shífēn zhōng, láiibují.<br/>(It's too far. [If] we have only ten minutes, we can't make it in time.)</p> |
| <p>OR</p> <p>Wǒmen yǒu shífēn zhōng, láiidejí láiibují?<br/>(<u>cue</u>) hěn jìn<br/>(We have ten minutes.<br/>Can we make it in time?)</p>           | <p>Hěn jìn. Yǒu shífēn zhōng, láiidejí.<br/>(It's very near. [If] we have ten minutes, we can make it in time.)</p>                       |
| <p>2. Wǒmen yǒu sānshífēn zhōng, láiidejí láiibují? tài yuǎn</p>                                                                                      | <p>Tài yuǎn. Jiù yǒu sānshífēn zhōng, láiibují.</p>                                                                                       |
| <p>3. Wǒmen yǒu èrshífēn zhōng, láiidejí láiibují? hěn jìn</p>                                                                                        | <p>Hěn jìn. Yǒu èrshífēn zhōng, láiidejí.</p>                                                                                             |

- |                                                           |                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 4. Wǒmen yǒu shíwǔfēn zhōng,<br>láidejí láibují? tài yuǎn | Tài yuǎn. Jiù yǒu shíwǔfēn zhōng,<br>láibují. |
| 5. Wǒmen yǒu shífēn zhōng,<br>láidejí láibují? hěn jìn    | Hěn jìn. Yǒu shífēn zhōng, láidejí.           |
| 6. Wǒmen yǒu èrshífēn zhōng,<br>láidejí láibují? tài yuǎn | Tài yuǎn. Jiù yǒu èrshífēn zhōng,<br>láibují. |

E. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                |                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐng màn yìdiǎn kāi.<br>(Please drive a little<br>slower.) | <u>You</u> : Bié kāi zhème kuài!<br>(Don't drive so fast!) |
| 2. Qǐng kuài yìdiǎn zǒu.                                                       | Bié zǒu zhème màn!                                         |
| 3. Qǐng màn yìdiǎn shuō.                                                       | Bié shuō zhème kuài!                                       |
| 4. Qǐng kuài yìdiǎn kāi.                                                       | Bié kāi zhème màn!                                         |
| 5. Qǐng kuài yìdiǎn kàn.                                                       | Bié kàn zhème màn!                                         |
| 6. Qǐng màn yìdiǎn shuō.                                                       | Bié shuō zhème kuài!                                       |
| 7. Qǐng kuài yìdiǎn zǒu.                                                       | Bié zǒu zhème màn!                                         |

F. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                  |                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒmen láidejí.<br>(cue) qǐng<br>(We can make it in<br>time.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒmen láidejí. Qǐng ni màn<br>yìdiǎn kāi.<br>(We can make it in time. Please<br>drive a little slower.) |
| OR Wǒmen láidejí.<br>(cue) bié<br>(We can make it in<br>time.)                   | Wǒmen láidejí. Bié kāi nàme<br>kuài!<br>(We can make it in time. Don't<br>drive so fast!)                            |
| 2. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. qǐng                                                       | Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. Qǐng ni màn<br>yìdiǎn kāi.                                                                        |



3. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. bié
4. Wǒmen láiidejí. qǐng
5. Wǒmen láiidejí. bié
6. Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. qǐng

- Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. Bié kāi nàme kuài!
- Wǒmen láiidejí. Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn kāi.
- Wǒmen láiidejí. Bié kāi nàme kuài!
- Wǒmen yǒu shíjiān. Qǐng ni màn yìdiǎn kāi.

G. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Èrshiqīkuài.  
(cue) bù  
(Twenty-seven dollars.)

OR Èrshiqīkuài.  
(cue) sān  
(Twenty-seven dollars.)

You: Zhè shì sānshikuài. Bú yòng zhǎo le.  
(Here's thirty dollars. Keep the change.)

Zhè shì sānshikuài. Qǐng ni zhǎo sānkuài qián.  
(Here's thirty dollars. Please give me three dollars [in] change.)

2. Èrshiliù kuài. bù
3. Èrshi kuài. shí
4. Èrshiwǔ kuài. bù
5. Èrshiyī kuài. jiǔ
6. Èrshibā kuài. bù

- Zhè shì sānshikuài. Bú yòng zhǎo le.
- Zhè shì sānshikuài. Qǐng ni zhǎo shíkuài qián.
- Zhè shì sānshikuài. Bú yòng zhǎo le.
- Zhè shì sānshikuài. Qǐng ni zhǎo jiǔkuài qián.
- Zhè shì sānshikuài. Bú yòng zhǎo le.

H. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                            |                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐng ni tíng yíxià.<br>(cue) yínháng<br>(Please stop for a<br>moment.) | <u>You</u> : Qǐng ni zài nèige yínháng tíng<br>yíxià.<br>(Please stop at that bank for<br>a moment.) |
| 2. Qǐng ni tíng yíxià.<br>càishichǎng                                                      | Qǐng ni zài nèige cáishichǎng tíng<br>yíxià.                                                         |
| 3. Qǐng ni tíng yíxià.<br>diànyǐngyuàn                                                     | Qǐng ni zài nèige diànyǐngyuàn tíng<br>yíxià.                                                        |
| 4. Qǐng ni tíng yíxià.<br>shūdiàn                                                          | Qǐng ni zài nèige shūdiàn tíng<br>yíxià.                                                             |
| 5. Qǐng ni tíng yíxià.<br>xuéxiào                                                          | Qǐng ni zài nèige xuéxiào tíng<br>yíxià.                                                             |
| 6. Qǐng ni tíng yíxià.<br>fàndiàn                                                          | Qǐng ni zài nèige fàndiàn tíng<br>yíxià.                                                             |
| 7. Qǐng ni tíng yíxià.<br>yínháng                                                          | Qǐng ni zài nèige yínháng tíng<br>yíxià.                                                             |

## UNIT 4

### REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

- |                                                                        |                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. A: Wǒ xiǎng qù Táinán wán jitiān.                                   | I'm thinking of going to Tainan to relax for a few days.                            |
| 2. A: Zuò Gōnglùjǔ xíng bu xíng?*                                      | Would it be all right to take the bus?                                              |
| B: Dào Táinán qù zuò Gōnglùjǔ bú dà fāngbian.                          | To go to Tainan, it's not very convenient to take the bus.                          |
| 3. C: Shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjǔ qu hǎo ne?         | Is it better to go by train or to go by bus?                                        |
| D: Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo.                                                  | It's better to go by train.                                                         |
| 4. E: Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjǔ qu hǎo ne? | Would you say it's better to go by train or to go by bus?                           |
| F: Dào Táinán zuò huǒchē zuì fāngbian.                                 | To Tainan, it's most convenient to take the train.                                  |
| 5. A: Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?                                            | Is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?                                       |
| B: Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián qù mǎi piào.                         | It would be best for you to go to buy your tickets two or three days ahead of time. |
| 6. A: Zuò Gōnglùjǔ yě děi xiān mǎi piào ma?                            | If I take the bus, is it also necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?               |
| B: Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.                                                | It's not necessary to buy tickets ahead of time.                                    |
| 7. B: Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?                                  | What train do you want to take?                                                     |
| A: Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.                                           | I want to take a morning train.                                                     |
| 8. B: Duìbuqǐ, shàngwǔde piào dōu mǎiwán le.                           | I'm sorry, the tickets for the morning trains are all sold out.                     |

---

\*The speakers on tape always say zuò Gōnglùjǔde chē for what is written here as zuò Gōnglùjǔ. Both expressions are acceptable. (See notes on No. 2.)

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                  |                                                          |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 9. chuán         | boat, ship                                               |
| 10. dìtiě        | subway (abbreviation for <u>dìxià</u><br><u>tiědào</u> ) |
| 11. dìxià huǒchē | underground train, subway                                |
| 12. wán (wánr)   | to play, to relax, to enjoy oneself                      |
| 13. -wán         | to be finished (occurs in compound<br>verbs of result)   |

VOCABULARY

bú bì	not necessary, don't have to
chuán	boat, ship
dìtiě	subway (abbreviation for <u>dìxià</u> <u>tiědào</u> )
dìxià huǒchē	underground train, subway
fāngbian	to be convenient
Gōnglùjú	Bureau of Highways (Taiwan)
huǒchē	train
liǎngsān-	two or three
màiwán le	to be sold out
wán (wánr) -wán	to play, to relax, to enjoy oneself to be finished (occurs in compound verbs of result)
xiān	ahead of time, beforehand
zuì hǎo	it would be best to

(introduced on C-2 tape)

huá chuán	to row a boat
sàn bù	to take a walk
shān	hill, mountain
shuǐ	rivers, lakes (literally, "water")
yóuyǒng	to swim

## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Wǒ xiǎng qù Táinan wán jitiān. I'm thinking of going to Tainan to relax for a few days.

### Note on No. 1

The basic meaning of the verb wán is "to play." It is often best translated into English as "to relax," "to enjoy oneself."

2. A: Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng? Would it be all right to take the bus?  
B: Dào Táinán qù zuò Gōnglùjú bú dà fāngbian. To go to Tainan, it's not very convenient to take the bus.

### Notes on No. 2

Gōnglùjú, "the Bureau of Highways" in Taiwan, is the agency which administers the island's intercity bus system. The phrase zuò Gōnglùjú means "to take a Bureau of Highways bus." This phrasing is analogous to "I'm going by Greyhound." In talking about the buses themselves, you would have to say Gōnglùjúde chē, "the buses of the Bureau of Highways":

Gōnglùjúde chē hěn shūfu. The buses of the Bureau of Highways are very comfortable.  
(shūfu, "to be comfortable")

Sentences containing both dào and zuò phrases: The zuò phrase usually comes first in a sentence with both a prepositional phrase expressing destination (dào...) and a prepositional phrase expressing means of conveyance (zuò...). However, if the destination is being stressed, the dào phrase may be placed at the beginning of the sentence, in the topic position. (See the second sentence in exchange 2.)

Tā měitiān zuò gōnggòng qìchē dào xuéxiào lái. He rides the bus to school every day.  
Dào yínháng qù, tā bú zuò gōnggòng qìchē. Tā zǒu lù qu. To go to the bank, he doesn't take the bus. He walks there.

Bú dà might also be translated as "not too," "not so."

3. C: Shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne,  
háishi zuò Gōnglùjū qu  
hǎo ne? Is it better to go by train or to  
go by bus?  
D: Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo. It's better to go by train.

Notes on No. 3

Shi...háishi: In a choice-type question, shi and háishi serve to mark off the choices more clearly. Below are some of the most common ways of asking the question "Do you want the red one or the yellow one?"

Nǐ yào hóngde, háishi yào huángde? (PREFERRED FORMS)

Nǐ shi yào hóngde, háishi yào huángde?

Nǐ yào hóngde, huángde? (FAMILIAR, VERY COLLOQUIAL; NO PAUSE AT COMMA)

Nǐ shi yào hóngde, shi yào huángde? (LEAST PREFERRED; shi UNSTRESSED HERE)

The marker ne clarifies the choices in a choice-type question. Ne may be placed after one or the other choice or after both choices.

Nǐ jīntiān qù ne, háishi míngtiān qù? Are you going today or tomorrow?

Nǐ jīntiān qù, háishi míngtiān qù ne?

Nǐ jīntiān qù ne, shì míngtiān qù ne? (COMMUNICATES GENUINE PERPLEXITY)

Zuò huǒchē qu hǎo: Here a whole phrase, which could also be a sentence, is used as the subject of the sentence.

Zuò huǒchē qù	hǎo.
(ride train go	good)

Hǎo is translated here as "better," not as "good." Adjectival verbs used alone (i.e., not modified by words such as hěn and tài) usually express comparison.

Něige xuésheng hǎo?

Which student is better?

Shéi kuài?

Who is faster?

4. E: Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qu  
hǎo ne, háishi zuò  
Gōnglùjū qu hǎo ne?  
F: Dào Tàinán zuò huǒchē zuì  
fāngbian.
- Would you say it's better to go by  
train or to go by bus?  
To Tainan, it's most convenient to  
take the train.

Note on No. 4

When nǐ shuō begins a question, the phrase is translated as "would you say" or "do you think."

5. A: Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?  
B: Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngsāntiān  
yīqián qù mǎi piào.
- Is it necessary to buy tickets  
ahead of time?  
It would be best for you to go to  
buy your tickets two or three  
days ahead of time.

Notes on No. 5

The adverb xiān may sometimes be translated as "ahead of time," "beforehand."

Zuì hǎo, "best," acts as an adverb in exchange 5, coming after the subject nǐ in the second sentence. Zuì hǎo is used to offer advice politely, not to warn a person that he had "better" or "best" do something.

Liǎngsāntiān: When approximate amounts, such as "two or three," are given in Chinese, the numbers are read together, with no equivalent of "or." This system is also used when two words are combined to indicate an approximate date.

sìwǔge rén	four or five people
míng hòutiān	tomorrow or the day after
qībāyuè	July or August

Liǎngsāntiān yīqián: For "ahead of time," "in advance," yīqián is used (instead of xiān) when the amount of time is stated. Yīqián follows the word indicating the amount of time.

- Nǐ děi xiān qù mǎi piào. You have to go ahead of time to buy tickets.
- Nǐ děi liǎngsāntiān yīqián qù mǎi piào. You have to go two or three days ahead of time to buy tickets.



6. A: Zuò Gōnglùjǔ yě děi xiān  
mǎi piào ma?

If I take the bus, is it also  
necessary to buy tickets ahead  
of time?

B: Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.

It's not necessary to buy tickets  
ahead of time.

Notes on No. 6

Zuò Gōnglùjǔ, "if I take the bus": The beginning of the first sentence in exchange 6 is translated with an "if" in English. Literally, the Chinese sentence is "Take the bus, also have to beforehand buy tickets?" In a sense, the "if" part of the sentence is a kind of topic in Chinese, providing the setting for the second part of the sentence. In Chinese, the setting or condition can often be put in the topic position. In English, a particular word must be used to clarify the relationship of the first part of the sentence to the second part.

Zuò Gōnglùjǔ,....

If I take the bus,....

When one takes the bus,....

For taking the bus,....

To take the bus,....

Bú bì, "not necessary," "don't have to," is the phrase to use as the negative of the auxiliary děi, "must," "have to." Děi cannot be made negative.\*

7. B: Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude  
chē?

What train do you want to take?

A: Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.

I want to take a morning train.

Note on No. 7

Shénme shíhoude chē has been translated simply as "what train." More literally, the phrase means "a train (arriving at) what time."

---

\*"Must not" as in "You must not go" can be translated as bù néng: Nǐ bù néng qù.

8. B: Duìbuqǐ, shàngwǔde piào dōu mǎiwán le. I'm sorry, the tickets for the morning trains are all sold out.

Notes on No. 8

Wán, "to end," "to be over," cannot take a direct object.

Wánle ma?	Is it over?
Wánle meiyou?	Is it over yet?
Hái méi wán ne.	It isn't over yet.

By itself, the expression Wán le! means "That's all," "There's no more," or "That's it!" People often end speeches and recordings with Wán le!

Mǎiwán le, "to be sold out," literally "sell finished": Here is another example of a compound verb of result.\* Compound verbs of result communicate both the action being performed and its result. In compound verbs of result, the first verb indicates the action; and the second, the result. Not every action verb is used in compound verbs of result, nor are verbs indicating the result always predictable.

All examples which have been presented in this and previous modules occur with completion le.

When -wán is used as an ending, it indicates finishing, as in Wǒ hái méi shuōwán, "I haven't finished speaking yet," or depletion, as in mǎiwán le, "sold out," and yòngwán le, "used up." In English, you might just say "finished," without indicating what you have finished doing. In Chinese, the action which has been finished is usually mentioned.

Wǒ chīwán le.	I have finished eating.
Wǒ huàwán le.	I have finished drawing.
Wǒ kànwán le.	I have finished reading.
Wǒ hái méi shuōwán ne.	I have not finished talking yet.
Tā hái méi zuòwán ne.	He has not finished (doing something) yet.

---

\*In DIR, Unit 4, you learned kànjian, "to see," literally "look-perceive."

DRILLS

A. Response Drill

- |                                                                          |                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker:</u> Nǐ qù nǎlǐ?<br>(cue) Tǎinán<br>(Where are you going?) | <u>You:</u> Wǒ xiǎng qù Tǎinán wán jitiān.<br>(I'm thinking of going to<br>Tainan to relax for a few<br>days.) |
| 2. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ? Xīnzhú                                                    | Wǒ xiǎng qù Xīnzhú wán jitiān.                                                                                 |
| 3. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ? Jiāyì                                                     | Wǒ xiǎng qù Jiāyì wán jitiān.                                                                                  |
| 4. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ? Gāoxióng                                                  | Wǒ xiǎng qù Gāoxióng wán jitiān.                                                                               |
| 5. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ? Huālián                                                   | Wǒ xiǎng qù Huālián wán jitiān.                                                                                |
| 6. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ? Táidōng                                                   | Wǒ xiǎng qù Táidōng wán jitiān.                                                                                |
| 7. Nǐ qù nǎlǐ? Táiběi                                                    | wǒ xiǎng qù Táiběi wán jitiān.                                                                                 |

B. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                     |                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker:</u> Zuò Gōnglùjǔ.<br>(cue) Tǎinán<br>(Take the bus.) | <u>You:</u> Dào Tǎinán qù zuò Gōnglùjǔ xíng<br>bu xíng?<br>(To go to Tainan, would it be<br>all right to take the bus?) |
| 2. Zuò huǒchē. Jiāyì                                                | Dào Jiāyì qù zuò huǒchē xíng bu<br>xíng?                                                                                |
| 3. Zuò zhídáchē. Gāoxióng                                           | Dào Gāoxióng qù zuò zhídáchē xíng<br>bu xíng?                                                                           |
| 4. Zuò jìchéngchē. Táidōng                                          | Dào Táidōng qù zuò jìchéngchē xíng<br>bu xíng?                                                                          |
| 5. Zuò huǒchē. Huālián                                              | Dào Huālián qù zuò huǒchē xíng<br>bu xíng?                                                                              |
| 6. Zuò jìchéngchē Jīlóng                                            | Dào Jīlóng qù zuò jìchéngchē xíng<br>bu xíng?                                                                           |
| 7. Zuò Gōnglùjǔ. Táizhōng                                           | Dào Táizhōng qù zuò Gōnglùjǔ xíng<br>bu xíng?                                                                           |

C. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Zuò gōnggòng qìchē<br/>xíng bu xíng?<br/>(<u>cue</u>) kěshi bú dà<br/>(Would it be all right<br/>to take the bus?)</p> <p>OR</p> <p>Zuò gōnggòng qìchē<br/>xíng bu xíng?<br/>(<u>cue</u>) zuì<br/>(Would it be all<br/>right to take the<br/>bus?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Zuò gōnggòng qìchē xíng, kěshi<br/>bú dà fāngbian.<br/>(It would be all right to take<br/>the bus, but it's not very<br/>convenient.)</p> <p>Zuò gōnggòng qìchē xíng, zuì<br/>fāngbian.<br/>(It would be all right to take<br/>the bus; it's most convenient.)</p> |
| <p>2. Zuò huǒchē xíng bu xíng?<br/>kěshi bú dà</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <p>Zuò huǒchē xíng, kěshi bú dà<br/>fāngbian.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <p>3. Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng bu xíng?<br/>zuì</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>Zuò Gōnglùjú xíng, zuì fāngbian.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <p>4. Zuò jìchéngchē xíng bu xíng?<br/>zuì</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Zuò jìchéngchē xíng, zuì fāngbian.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <p>5. Zuò Sānlù chē xíng bu xíng?<br/>kěshi bú dà</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <p>Zuò Sānlù chē xíng, kěshi bú dà<br/>fāngbian.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <p>6. Zuò Wǔlù chē xíng bu xíng?<br/>zuì</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>Zuò Wǔlù chē xíng, zuì fāngbian.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

D. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Zuò huǒchē hǎo bu<br/>hǎo?<br/>(<u>cue</u>) Gōnglùjú<br/>(Is it all right to<br/>take the train?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo<br/>ne, háishi zuò Gōnglùjú qu<br/>hǎo ne?<br/>(Would you say it's better to<br/>go by train or to go by bus?)</p> |
| <p>2. Jīntiān qù hǎo bu hǎo?<br/>míngtiān</p>                                                                               | <p>Nǐ shuō, jīntiān qù hǎo ne, háishi<br/>míngtiān qù hǎo ne?</p>                                                                                               |
| <p>3. Zuò Gōnglùjú hǎo bu hǎo?<br/>jìchéngchē</p>                                                                           | <p>Nǐ shuō shì zuò Gōnglùjú qu hǎo ne,<br/>háishi zuò jìchéngchē qu hǎo ne?</p>                                                                                 |
| <p>4. Míngtiān qù hǎo bu hǎo?<br/>hòutiān</p>                                                                               | <p>Nǐ shuō, míngtiān qù hǎo ne, háishi<br/>hòutiān qù hǎo ne?</p>                                                                                               |
| <p>5. Zuò huǒchē hǎo bu hǎo?<br/>qìchē</p>                                                                                  | <p>Nǐ shuō shì zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne,<br/>háishi zuò qìchē qu hǎo ne?</p>                                                                                        |

6. Jīntiān qù hǎo bu hǎo?  
míngtiān

Nǐ shuō, jīntiān qù hǎo ne, háishi  
míngtiān qù hǎo ne?

7. Zuò fēijī hǎo bu hǎo?  
huǒchē

Nǐ shuō shì zuò fēijī qu hǎo ne,  
háishi zuò huǒchē qu hǎo ne?

E. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?  
(cue) yes  
(Is it necessary to buy  
tickets ahead of time?)

You: Děi xiān mǎi piào.  
(It's necessary to buy tickets  
ahead of time.)

OR Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?  
(cue) no  
(Is it necessary to  
buy tickets ahead  
of time?)

Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.  
(It's not necessary to buy  
tickets ahead of time.)

2. Děi xiān niàn Zhōngguo lìshǐ ma?  
yes

Děi xiān niàn Zhōngguo lìshǐ.

3. Děi xiān zuò Yí lù chē ma? no

Bú bì xiān zuò Yí lù chē.

4. Děi xiān dào Xīdān ma? yes

Děi xiān dào Xīdān.

5. Děi xiān huàn qián ma? no

Bú bì xiān huàn qián.

6. Děi xiān qù kàn gēge ma? no

Bú bì xiān qù kàn gēge.

F. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?  
(cue) 2 or 3 days  
(Is it necessary to  
buy tickets ahead  
of time?)

You: Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngsāntiān yǐqián  
mǎi piào.  
(It would be best for you to  
buy your tickets two or three  
days ahead of time.)

OR Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?  
(cue) no  
(Is it necessary to  
buy tickets ahead  
of time?)

Bú bì xiān mǎi piào.  
(It's not necessary to buy  
tickets ahead of time.)

2. Děi xiān mǎi piào ma?  
2 days

Nǐ zuì hǎo liǎngtiān yǐqián mǎi piào.

- |                                           |                                               |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 3. Děi xiān huàn qián ma?<br>4 or 5 days  | Nǐ zuì hǎo sìwǔtiān yǐqián huàn qián.         |
| 4. Děi xiān qù kàn gēge ma?<br>no         | Bú bì xiān qù kàn gēge.                       |
| 5. Děi xiān kàn zhèiběn shū ma?<br>3 days | Nǐ zuì hǎo sāntiān yǐqián kàn<br>zhèiběn shū. |
| 6. Děi xiān huàn qián ma? no              | Bú bì xiān huàn qián.                         |

G. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                 |                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ yào zuò shénme<br>shíhoude chē?<br>(cue) shàngwǔ<br>(What train do you want<br>to take?) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.<br>(I want to take a morning train.) |
| 2. Nǐ yào zuò jǐdiǎn zhōngde chē?<br>xiàwǔ 2:10                                                                 | Wǒ yào zuò xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn shífēnde<br>chē.                                 |
| 3. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?<br>wǎnshang                                                                  | Wǒ yào zuò wǎnshangde chē.                                                  |
| 4. Nǐ yào zuò jǐdiǎn zhōngde chē?<br>zǎoshang 9:50                                                              | Wǒ yào zuò zǎoshang jiǔdiǎn<br>wǔshífēnde chē.                              |
| 5. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?<br>shàngwǔ                                                                   | Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔde chē.                                                   |
| 6. Nǐ yào zuò jǐdiǎn zhōngde chē?<br>shàngwǔ 11:40                                                              | Wǒ yào zuò shàngwǔ shíyīdiǎn<br>sìshífēnde chē.                             |
| 7. Nǐ yào zuò shénme shíhoude chē?<br>xiàwǔ                                                                     | Wǒ yào zuò xiàwǔde chē.                                                     |

H. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐngwèn, shàngwǔde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?<br>(May I ask, are there still tickets for the morning train?) | <u>You</u> : Qǐngwèn, shàngwǔde chēpiào dōu mǎiwán le meiyǒu?<br>(May I ask, are the tickets for the morning trains all sold out?) |
| 2. Qǐngwèn, dào Táinán qùde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?                                                                           | Qǐngwèn, dào Táinán qùde chēpiào dōu mǎiwán le meiyǒu?                                                                             |
| 3. Qǐngwèn, míngtiān shàngwǔde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?                                                                        | Qǐngwèn, míngtiān shàngwǔde chēpiào dōu mǎiwán le meiyǒu?                                                                          |
| 4. Qǐngwèn, dào Huālián qùde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?                                                                          | Qǐngwèn, dào Huālián qùde chēpiào dōu mǎiwán le meiyǒu?                                                                            |
| 5. Qǐngwèn, jīntiān xiàwǔde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?                                                                           | Qǐngwèn, jīntiān xiàwǔde chēpiào dōu mǎiwán le meiyǒu?                                                                             |
| 6. Qǐngwèn, dào Gāoxióng qùde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?                                                                         | Qǐngwèn, dào Gāoxióng qùde chēpiào dōu mǎiwán le meiyǒu?                                                                           |
| 7. Qǐngwèn, míngtiānde chēpiào hái yǒu meiyǒu?                                                                                | Qǐngwèn, míngtiānde chēpiào dōu mǎiwán le meiyǒu?                                                                                  |

## UNIT 5

## REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

- |                                                                                       |                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. A: Wǒ yě xiǎng dào Nánjīng qù kànkàn.                                              | I would also like to go to Nánjīng to look around.                                                                  |
| B: Nǐ jīhua nēitiān qù?                                                               | What day do you plan to go?                                                                                         |
| A: Míngtiān huòshì hòutiān qù dōu kěyǐ.                                               | Tomorrow and (or) the day after are both possible.                                                                  |
| 2. A: Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn?                                               | How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?                                                                                   |
| B: Yǒu liǎngbǎiwūshíduō gōnglǐ.                                                       | It's over 250 kilometers.                                                                                           |
| 3. A: Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou?                                              | How long does it take to go by train?                                                                               |
| B: Dàgài yào zǒu sìge bàn xiǎoshí.                                                    | It probably takes four and a half hours.                                                                            |
| 4. C: Yào zǒu bàngē xiǎoshí.                                                          | It takes half an hour.                                                                                              |
| 5. B: Nǐ jīhua zài Nánjīng zhù jǐtiān?                                                | How many days do you plan to stay in Nánjīng?                                                                       |
| A: Zhèi shì wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo. Nǐ shuō liǎngtiān gòu bu gòu? | This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. I haven't gone there before. Would you say two days are enough? |
| B: Liǎngtiān gòu le.                                                                  | Two days are enough.                                                                                                |
| 6. A: Měitiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?                                                         | How many trips are there each day?                                                                                  |
| A: Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyòu chē?                                                              | Are there trains in the afternoon?                                                                                  |
| A: Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.                                                        | I hope to leave here in the afternoon.                                                                              |
| 7.* B: Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yìbān tèkuài.                                        | There's an express at 1305.                                                                                         |
| 8.** B: Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yítàng tèkuài.                                      | There's an express at 1305.                                                                                         |

\* This exchange occurs on the C-1 tape only.

\*\* This exchange occurs on the P-1 tape only.



ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                     |                                           |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 9. dǎsuan           | to plan to                                |
| 10. huòzhě (huòzhe) | or (alternate form of <u>huòshi</u> )     |
| 11. yǐhòu           | afterwards, later on, in the future       |
| 12. zhōngtóu        | hour (alternate word for <u>xiǎoshí</u> ) |



Gate at Shēnzhèn, where people get off the train from Hong Kong, walk across a bridge into China (through the gate in photo), and board a train for Guǎngzhōu. Most of the people in the picture are Hong Kong residents on their way to visit relatives in Guǎngzhōu.

## VOCABULARY

bàn	half (followed by a counter or a noun which does not take a counter)
-cì	occasion, time
dàgài	probably, approximately
dǎsuàn (dǎsuan)	to plan to
dìyíci (dìyīcì)	the first time
-duō	over, more than
gōnglǐ	kilometer
gòu	to be enough
huòshi	or
huòzhě (huòzhe)	or
jìhua	to plan to
kānkan	to see, to look around, to sight-see, to visit
líkai	to leave
-tàng	(counter for bus trips, train trips, etc.)
tèkuài	express train
xiǎoshí	hour
xīwàng (xīwang)	to hope
yào	must, to have to; to take (a certain amount of time)
yǐhòu	afterwards, later on; in the future
yǐqián	before, in the past
zhōngtóu	hour

(introduced on C-2 tape)

biéde dìfang	other places (cf. <u>biérén</u> , "other people")
cānguān	to visit as an observer
duōshao hào	what size (shoe)
gōngchǎng	factory
juéding	to decide
yìshuāng píxié	a pair of leather shoes
yòu hǎo yòu piányi	both good and inexpensive

REFERENCE NOTES

- |                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. A: Wǒ yě xiǎng dào Nánjīng qù kànkān.<br/>         B: Nǐ jīhuà něitiān qù?<br/>         A: Míngtiān huòshì hòutiān qù dōu kěyǐ.</p> | <p>I would also like to go to Nánjīng to look around.<br/>         What day do you plan to go?<br/>         Tomorrow and (or) the day after are both possible.</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Notes on No. 1

Kànkān, "to have a look": In exchange 1, kànkān refers to doing some sight-seeing. The reduplicated verb form implies an indefinite amount of sight-seeing, best translated into English as "to have a look," "to look around."

Huòshì (alternate, huòzhě) is used for "or" when both alternatives are acceptable or possible.

<p>Wǒ qù mǎi yìdiǎnr píjiǔ huòshì mǎi yìdiǎnr qīshuǐ.</p>	<p>I will go to buy some beer or some soft drinks.</p>
-----------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------

<p>Tā míngtiān huòshì hòutiān lái kàn nǐ ma?</p>	<p>Is he coming to see you tomorrow or the day after? (i.e., some-time during the next two days)</p>
--------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Háishi is used for "or" when a choice is required between the alternatives.

<p>Nǐ mǎi píjiǔ háishi mǎi qīshuǐ?</p>	<p>Are you buying beer or (are you buying) soft drinks?</p>
----------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------

<p>Nǐ xǐhuan dàde háishi xǐhuan xiǎode?</p>	<p>Do you like the large one or (do you like) the small one?</p>
---------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------

- |                                                                                              |                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>2. A: Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn?<br/>         B: Yǒu liǎngbǎi wūshiduo gōnglǐ.</p> | <p>How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?<br/>         It's over 250 kilometers.</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Notes on No. 2

Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn? Yǒu is used in expressing the distance between two points.

Shànghǎi	lí	Nánjīng	yǒu	duó	yuǎn?
(Shànghǎi	be separated from	Nánjīng	there is	how much	distance?)

"How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?"

Tiānjīn	lí	Běijīng	yǒu	120 gōnglǐ.
(Tiānjīn	be separated from	Běijīng	there is	120 kilometers.)

"Tiānjīn is 120 kilometers from Běijīng."

Liǎngbǎi wūshíduō gōnglǐ: Approximate numbers may be expressed by adding -duō to number phrases. When added immediately after a number, before the counter,\* -duō refers to an indefinite amount within the range of the round number.

liǎngbǎiduō gōnglǐ                      more than 200 kilometers (but fewer than 300)

yìqiānduōge xuésheng                      more than 1,000 students (but fewer than 2,000)

sānshíduōkuài qián                      more than 30 dollars (but fewer than 40)

Beginning with 20, -duō may be used in this way with any round number.

With round numbers from 20 through 90, -jǐ may be used instead of -duō.

èrshíduōge rén                      more than 20 persons (but fewer than 30)

èrshíjǐge rén

sìshíduō gōnglǐ                      more than 40 kilometers (but fewer than 50)

sìshíjǐ gōnglǐ

With the number 10, only -jǐ is used, never -duō.

shíjǐkuài qián                      more than 10 dollars (but fewer than 20)

---

\*Gōnglǐ is one of the nouns used without a counter.

3. A: Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou? How long does it take to go by train?  
 B: Dàgài yào zǒu sìge bàn xiǎoshí. It probably takes four and a half hours.
4. C: Yào zǒu bànge xiǎoshí. It takes half an hour.

Notes on Nos. 3-4

The auxiliary verb yào, "to want," is sometimes used as "to need to," "to have to." (See the first sentence in exchange 3.)

Zuò huǒchē	yào zǒu	duōshao shíhou?
(ride train)	have to go	how much time?)

"How long does it take to go by train?"

Yào may also be used as a main verb meaning "to take [a certain amount of time]":

Zuò huǒchē	yào	duōshǎo shíhou?
(ride train)	takes	how much time?)

"How long does it take by train?"

Bàn-, "a half (of)," is used like a number--before a counter or before a noun which does not require a counter.

bànge xiǎoshí	half an hour
bànnián	half a year
bànge píngguǒ	half an apple

Sìge bàn: When bàn FOLLOWS a counter or a noun not requiring a counter, the word is translated as "and a half."

liǎngkuài bàn	two and a half dollars
sāntiān bàn	three and a half days
yíge bàn xiǎoshí	one and a half hours

Xiǎoshí: Formerly, the Chinese considered that one day and night (24 hours) was divided into twelve 2-hour periods of time. Each of these time periods was divided into two xiǎoshí, "small hours," when telling time by the Western 24-hour system gained popularity throughout the world.

5. B: Nǐ jìhua zài Nánjīng zhù jǐtiān? How many days do you plan to stay in Nánjīng?  
A: Zhèi shí wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo. Nǐ shuō liǎngtiān gòu bu gou? This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. I haven't gone there before. Would you say two days are enough?  
B: Liǎngtiān gòu le. Two days are enough.

Note on No. 5

Gòu le: The last sentence in exchange 5 ends with the new-situation marker le. This marker is used to describe what a situation is, was, or will be AT A SPECIFIED TIME. The travel agent says that, when the visit has lasted two days, THEN it will be long enough.

6. A: Měitiān yǒu jǐtàng chē? How many trains are there each day?  
A: Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyou chē? Are there trains in the afternoon?  
A: Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr. I hope to leave here in the afternoon.

Notes on No. 6

Jǐtàng: The counter -tàng is used when the trip mentioned is not a particular one, scheduled at a certain time. Similarly, it can also be used to talk about the number of trips a person has made, or will make.

Líkāi, "to leave," may be followed by an object (the place). On the other hand, zǒu, "to leave," is never followed by an object.

- Nǐ shénme shíhou líkāi zhèr? When are you leaving here?  
Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu? When are you leaving?

7. B: Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yìbān tèkuài. There's an express at 1305.
8. B: Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn yǒu yítàng tèkuài. There's an express at 1305.

Notes on Nos. 7-8

Shísāndiǎn líng wǔfēn: For train and bus schedules, a 24-hour clock is commonly used in China, beginning with 1 a.m. and continuing to midnight, or 2400.

<u>12-hour clock</u>		<u>24-hour clock</u>	
zǎoshàng shídiǎn	10 a.m.	shídiǎn	1000
xiàwǔ yìdiǎn	1 p.m.	shísāndiǎn	1300
xiàwǔ wǔdiǎn	5 p.m.	shìqīdiǎn	1700
wǎnshàng shídiǎn	10 p.m.	èrshìèrdiǎn	2200

Líng is included to indicate the zero in "1305."

Tèkuài is an abbreviation for tèbié kuàichē, "special express train."

Yìbān and yítàng, counters for trips made by trains, buses, planes, and other conveyances, are sometimes interchangeable.

DRILLS

A. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                  |                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wǒ dāsuan dào Nánjīng qù kànkān.<br/>(cue) něitiān<br/>(I'm planning to go to Nánjīng to look around.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Nǐ dāsuan něitiān qù?<br/>(What day do you plan to go?)</p> |
| <p>2. Wǒ xiǎng dào Xiān qù kànkān.<br/>jǐyuè</p>                                                                                 | <p>Nǐ xiǎng jǐyuè qù?</p>                                                  |
| <p>3. Wǒ jìhua dào Húběi qù kànkān.<br/>xīngqījǐ</p>                                                                             | <p>Nǐ jìhua xīngqījǐ qù?</p>                                               |
| <p>4. Wǒ dāsuan dào Shànghǎi qù kànkān.<br/>jǐhào</p>                                                                            | <p>Nǐ dāsuan jǐhào qù?</p>                                                 |
| <p>5. Wǒ jìhua dào Sūzhōu qù kànkān.<br/>jǐyuè</p>                                                                               | <p>Nǐ jìhua jǐyuè qù?</p>                                                  |
| <p>6. Wǒ xiǎng dào Běijīng qù kànkān.<br/>něitiān</p>                                                                            | <p>Nǐ xiǎng něitiān qù?</p>                                                |
| <p>7. Wǒ dāsuan dào Wǔchāng qù kànkān.<br/>xīngqījǐ</p>                                                                          | <p>Nǐ dāsuan xīngqījǐ qù?</p>                                              |

B. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nǐ dāsuan shénme shíhou dào Nánjīng qù?<br/>(cue) xiàge yuè<br/>(When are you planning to go to Nánjīng?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Wǒ dāsuan xiàge yuè dào Nánjīng qù kànkān.<br/>(I'm planning to go to see Nánjīng next month.)</p> |
| <p>2. Nǐ jìhua jǐyuè dào Shànghǎi qù?<br/>Liùyuè</p>                                                                                | <p>Wǒ jìhua Liùyuè dào Shànghǎi qù kànkān.</p>                                                                    |
| <p>3. Nǐ xiǎng něitiān dào Guǎngzhōu qù?<br/>hòutiān</p>                                                                            | <p>Wǒ xiǎng hòutiān dào Guǎngzhōu qù kànkān.</p>                                                                  |



- |                                                           |                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 4. Nǐ dǎsuan nǎinián dào Zhōngguo qù?<br>míngnián         | Wǒ dǎsuan míngnián dào Zhōngguo qu kànkàn.    |
| 5. Nǐ jìhua jǐyuè dào Xiānggǎng qù?<br>Èryuè              | Wǒ jìhua Èryuè dào Xiānggǎng qu kànkàn.       |
| 6. Nǐ xiǎng xīngqījǐ dào Běijīng qù?<br>Xīngqīsān         | Wǒ xiǎng Xīngqīsān dào Běijīng qu kànkàn.     |
| 7. Nǐ dǎsuan jǐdiǎn zhōng dào tā nèr qù?<br>sāndiǎn zhōng | Wǒ dǎsuan sāndiǎn zhōng dào tā nèr qu kànkàn. |

C. Response Drill

- |                                                                                             |                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ jìhua nǎitiān qù?<br>(cue) Xīngqīèr<br>(What day do you plan to go?) | <u>You</u> : Xīngqīèr huòzhě Xīngqīsān, dōu kényi.<br>(Tuesday and [or] Wednesday are both possible.) |
| 2. Nǐ jìhua nǎitiān qù? wǔhào                                                               | Wǔhào huòzhě liùhào, dōu kényi.                                                                       |
| 3. Nǐ xiǎng jǐyuè qù? Wǔyuè                                                                 | Wǔyuè huòzhě Liùyuè, dōu kényi.                                                                       |
| 4. Nǐ xiǎng nǎinián qù? 1977                                                                | Yījiǔqīqī huòzhě Yījiǔqībā, dōu kényi.                                                                |
| 5. Nǐ dǎsuan shénme shíhou qù?<br>xiàyuè sìhào                                              | Xiàyuè sìhào huòzhě xiàyuè wǔhào, dōu kényi.                                                          |
| 6. Nǐ dǎsuan jǐdiǎn zhōng qù?<br>shàngwǔ shídiǎn                                            | Shàngwǔ shídiǎn huòzhě shàngwǔ shíyīdiǎn, dōu kényi.                                                  |
| 7. Nǐ jìhua jǐhào qù? èrshiqī                                                               | Èrshiqīhào huòzhě Èrshibāhào, dōu kényi.                                                              |

D. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yuǎn ma?<br/>         (cue) duō<br/>         (Is Shànghǎi far from Nánjīng?)</p> <p>OR Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yuǎn ma?<br/>         (cue) duōshao<br/>         (Is Shànghǎi far from Nánjīng?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn?<br/>         (How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?)</p> <p>Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duōshao gōnglǐ?<br/>         (How many kilometers is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?)</p> |
| <p>2. Běijīng lí Tiānjīn yuǎn ma?<br/>         duō</p>                                                                                                                                                                                    | <p>Běijīng lí Tiānjīn yǒu duō yuǎn?</p>                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <p>3. Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yuǎn ma?<br/>         duōshao</p>                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu duōshao gōnglǐ?</p>                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <p>4. Nánjīng lí Běijīng yuǎn ma?<br/>         duōshao</p>                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Nánjīng lí Běijīng yǒu duōshao gōnglǐ?</p>                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <p>5. Guǎngzhōu lí Wǔhàn yuǎn ma?<br/>         duō</p>                                                                                                                                                                                    | <p>Guǎngzhōu lí Wǔhàn yǒu duō yuǎn?</p>                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <p>6. Shànghǎi lí Hángzhōu yuǎn ma?<br/>         duōshao</p>                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>Shànghǎi lí Hángzhōu yǒu duōshao gōnglǐ?</p>                                                                                                                                                                   |

E. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu duō yuǎn?<br/>         (cue) dàgài 270<br/>         (How far is Shànghǎi from Nánjīng?)</p> <p>OR Tiānjīn lí Běijīng yǒu duō yuǎn?<br/>         (cue) 80duō<br/>         (How far is Tiānjīn from Běijīng?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Dàgài yǒu èrbǎiqīshí gōnglǐ.<br/>         (It's probably 270 kilometers.)</p> <p>Dàgài lí Běijīng yǒu bāshíduō gōnglǐ.<br/>         (It's probably more than 80 kilometers.)</p> |
| <p>2. Běijīng lí Hángzhōu yǒu duō yuǎn?<br/>         900duō</p>                                                                                                                                                                                               | <p>Dàgài lí Hángzhōu yǒu jiǔbǎiduō gōnglǐ.</p>                                                                                                                                                  |

- |                                                |                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 3. Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu duō yuǎn? dàgài 800 | Dàgài yǒu bābǎi gōnglǐ.                     |
| 4. Nánjīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu duō yuǎn? dàgài 200 | Dàgài yǒu èrbǎi gōnglǐ.                     |
| 5. Wūhàn lí Běijīng yǒu duō yuǎn? 700duō       | Dàgài lí Běijīng yǒu qībǎiduō gōnglǐ.       |
| 6. Hángzhōu lí Shànghǎi yǒu duō yuǎn? 170duō   | Dàgài lí Shànghǎi yǒu yībǎiqīshíduō gōnglǐ. |

F. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.<br>(cue) méi<br>(Shànghǎi is 300 kilometers from Nánjīng.) | <u>You</u> : Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng méiyǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.<br>(Shànghǎi isn't [is less than] 300 kilometers from Nánjīng.) |
| OR Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.<br>(cue) dàgài<br>(Shànghǎi is 300 kilometers from Běijīng.)                | Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng dàgài yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.<br>(Shànghǎi is probably 300 kilometers from Běijīng.)                    |
| OR Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎi gōnglǐ.<br>(cue) duō<br>(Shànghǎi is 300 kilometers from Běijīng.)                  | Shànghǎi lí Nánjīng yǒu sānbǎiduō gōnglǐ.<br>(Shànghǎi is more than 300 kilometers from Běijīng.)                      |
| 2. Běijīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu yìqiān gōnglǐ. méi                                                                         | Běijīng lí Shànghǎi méiyǒu yìqiān gōnglǐ.                                                                              |
| 3. Wūhàn lí Běijīng yǒu bābǎi gōnglǐ. dàgài                                                                           | Wūhàn lí Běijīng dàgài yǒu bābǎi gōnglǐ.                                                                               |
| 4. Nánjīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu èrbǎi gōnglǐ. duō                                                                          | Nánjīng lí Shànghǎi yǒu èrbǎiduō gōnglǐ.                                                                               |
| 5. Hángzhōu lí Shànghǎi yǒu yībǎi gōnglǐ. duō                                                                         | Hángzhōu lí Shànghǎi yǒu yībǎiduō gōnglǐ.                                                                              |

G. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                                   |                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge zhōngtóu?<br>(cue) duó jiǔ<br>(How many hours does it take by train?) | <u>You</u> : Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duó jiǔ?<br>(How long does it take by train?) |
| 2. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duó jiǔ?<br>duōshao shíhou                                                                  | Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou?                                            |
| 3. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao shíhou? jǐtiān                                                                      | Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐtiān?                                                    |
| 4. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐtiān? jǐge xīngqī                                                                         | Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xīngqī?                                               |
| 5. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xīngqī? jǐge xiǎoshí                                                                   | Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xiǎoshí?                                              |
| 6. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu jǐge xiǎoshí? duōshao tiān                                                                  | Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao tiān?                                              |
| 7. Zuò huǒchē yào zǒu duōshao tiān?                                                                               |                                                                               |

H. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                    |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Yào zǒu bànge zhōngtóu.<br>(cue) 1<br>(It takes half an hour.) | <u>You</u> : Yào zǒu yíge bàn zhōngtóu.<br>(It takes an hour and a half.) |
| OR Yào zǒu bàntiān.<br>(cue) 3<br>(It takes half a day.)                           | Yào zǒu sāntiān bàn.<br>(It takes three and a half days.)                 |
| 2. Yào zǒu bànge yuè. 2                                                            | Yào zǒu liǎngge bàn yuè.                                                  |
| 3. Yào zǒu bànge xīngqī. 1                                                         | Yào zǒu yíge bàn xīngqī.                                                  |
| 4. Yào zǒu bànnián. 1                                                              | Yào zǒu yìnián bàn.                                                       |
| 5. Yào zǒu bànge zhōngtóu. 4                                                       | Yào zǒu sìge bàn zhōngtóu.                                                |
| 6. Yào zǒu bànge yuè. 1                                                            | Yào zǒu yíge bàn yuè.                                                     |

I. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Zhèi shi wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù.<br/>         (cue) yǐhòu<br/>         (This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng.)</p> <p>OR</p> <p>Zhèi shi wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù.<br/>         (cue) yǐqián<br/>         (This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Zhè shi wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐhòu hái yào qù.<br/>         (This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. Later on I want to go again.)</p> <p>Zhè shi wǒ dìyīcì dào Nánjīng qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo.<br/>         (This will be the first time I have gone to Nánjīng. I haven't gone there before.)</p> |
| <p>2. Zhèi shi tā dìyīcì xué Zhōngguo huà. yǐhòu</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <p>Zhè shi tā dìyīcì xué Zhōngguo huà. Yǐhòu hái yào xué.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <p>3. Zhèi shi tā dìyīcì chī Zhōngguo fàn. yǐqián</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <p>Zhè shi tā dìyīcì chī Zhōngguo fàn. Yǐqián méi chīguo.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <p>4. Zhèi shi wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái. yǐhòu</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <p>Zhè shi wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái. Yǐhòu hái yào lái.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <p>5. Zhèi shi wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái. yǐqián</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | <p>Zhè shi wǒ dìyīcì dào zhèr lái. Yǐqián méi lái guo.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <p>6. Zhèi shi wǒ dìyīcì dào Měiguó qù. yǐqián</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <p>Zhè shi wǒ dìyīcì dào Měiguó qù. Yǐqián méi qùguo.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

J. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nǐ shuō lái liǎngtiān gòu bu gòu?<br/>         (Would you say it would be enough to come for two days?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Lái liǎngtiān gòu le.<br/>         (It would be enough to come for two days.)</p> |
| <p>2. Nǐ shuō qù liǎngtiān gòu bu gòu?</p>                                                                                        | <p>Qù liǎngtiān gòu le.</p>                                                                      |
| <p>3. Nǐ shuō xué liǎngniǎnde Zhōngwén gòu bu gòu?</p>                                                                            | <p>Xué liǎngniǎnde Zhōngwén gòu le.</p>                                                          |
| <p>4. Nǐ shuō zhù sānge yuè gòu bu gòu?</p>                                                                                       | <p>Zhù sānge yuè gòu le.</p>                                                                     |

- |                                                |                           |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 5. Nǐ shuō niǎn jiūge xīngqī gòu bu gou?       | Niǎn jiūge xīngqī gòu le. |
| 6. Nǐ shuō dào nèr qù wǎnr shítiān gòu bu gou? | Wǎnr shítiān gòu le.      |
| 7. Nǐ shuō zǒu yíge zhōngtóu gòu bu gou?       | Zǒu yíge zhōngtóu gòu le. |

K. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.<br>(cue) Xiàwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?<br>(I hope to leave here in the afternoon.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.<br>Xiàwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?<br>(I hope to leave here in the afternoon. How many trains are there in the afternoon?) |
| 2. Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr.<br>Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyou chē?                                                                    | Wǒ xīwang xiàwǔ líkāi zhèr. Xiàwǔ yǒu meiyou chē?                                                                                                         |
| 3. Wǒ xīwang wǎnshang líkāi zhèr.<br>Wǎnshang yǒu jǐtàng chē?                                                              | Wǒ xīwang wǎnshang líkāi zhèr.<br>Wǎnshang yǒu jǐtàng chē?                                                                                                |
| 4. Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīsān líkāi zhèr.<br>Xīngqīsān yǒu jǐtàng chē?                                                            | Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīsān líkāi zhèr.<br>Xīngqīsān yǒu jǐtàng chē?                                                                                              |
| 5. Wǒ xīwang míngtiān líkāi zhèr.<br>Míngtiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?                                                              | Wǒ xīwang míngtiān líkāi zhèr.<br>Míngtiān yǒu jǐtàng chē?                                                                                                |
| 6. Wǒ xīwang jǐntiān shàngwǔ líkāi zhèr.<br>Shàngwǔ yǒu meiyou chē?                                                        | Wǒ xīwang jǐntiān shàngwǔ líkāi zhèr.<br>Shàngwǔ yǒu meiyou chē?                                                                                          |
| 7. Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīwǔ líkāi zhèr.<br>Xīngqīwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?                                                              | Wǒ xīwang Xīngqīwǔ líkāi zhèr.<br>Xīngqīwǔ yǒu jǐtàng chē?                                                                                                |

UNIT 6

REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

- |                                                                           |                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. A: Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?                                                   | What time does it leave?                                                          |
| B: Shíbādiǎn wúshiwūfēn fā chē.                                           | It departs at 1855.                                                               |
| A: Nà hǎo.                                                                | That's fine.                                                                      |
| 2. B: Qǐng ni bǎ nǐde hùzhào hé<br>lùxíngzhèng gěi wo.                    | Please give me your passport and<br>travel permit.                                |
| A: Hǎo, gěi ni.                                                           | Okay, here it is.                                                                 |
| 3. A: Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài<br>dìjǐ zhàntái?                          | On which platform is the train to<br>Shànghǎi?                                    |
| B: Zài dìyī zhàntái.                                                      | It's on Platform Number 1.                                                        |
| 4. B: Bú yòng jí. Hái zǎo ne.                                             | No need to be anxious. It's still<br>early.                                       |
| B: Nǐ xiān zài zhèige jiēdàishì<br>xiūxi.                                 | First, rest a bit in this waiting<br>room.                                        |
| 5. A: Wǒ zhèijiàn xíngli zěnme<br>bàn? Shì bu shì kéyi<br>náshang chē qu? | What should I do about this<br>suitcase of mine? May I take it<br>onto the train? |
| B: Kéyi bǎ xíngli náshang chē<br>qu.                                      | You may take the suitcase onto the<br>train.                                      |
| 6. A: Zhèibān chē yǒu cānchē ba?                                          | This train has a dining car, I<br>suppose?                                        |
| B: Yǒu. Yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu<br>Xīcān.                                    | Yes. There's Chinese food and<br>there's also Western food.                       |
| A: Hǎojíle.                                                               | Great.                                                                            |
| 7. C: Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi<br>le.                                  | The next station is Shànghǎi.                                                     |
| C: Kuài yào dào zhàn le.                                                  | We are about to arrive at the<br>station.                                         |
| C: Nín zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.                                                | Please get ready to get off the<br>train.                                         |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |              |                                                                               |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8. bān       | to move                                                                       |
| 9. nāshangqu | to take up                                                                    |
| nāshanglai   | to bring up                                                                   |
| nāxiaqu      | to take down                                                                  |
| nāxialai     | to bring down                                                                 |
| 10. pǎo      | to run                                                                        |
| 11. wǎn      | to be late                                                                    |
| 12. yuètái   | train platform (alternate word for<br><u>zhāntái</u> , more common in Taiwan) |



## VOCABULARY

bān	to move (e.g., furniture) (new house)
bàn	to handle, to manage, to do
cānchē	dining car
fā chē	to depart (from the first terminal of a train route)
hǎojíle	to be wonderful, to be great
hé	and
hùzhào	passport
jí	to be anxious
jiēdàishì (jiēdàishǐ)	waiting room
-jíle	extremely, awfully
kāi	to leave
kuài	soon
lǚxíngzhèng	travel permit
ná	to pick up, to hold, to take
náshànglai	to bring up
náshàngqu	to take up
náxiàlai	to bring down
náxiàqu	to take down
pǎo	to run
wǎn	to be late
Xīcān	Western food
xiūxi	to rest, to relax
yào	will, going to
yuètái	train platform
zǎo	to be early
zhāntái	train platform
Zhōngcān	Chinese food
zhǔnbèi	to prepare, to get ready

(introduced on C-2 tape)

bāng	to help
bú yào	don't
láilai wǎngwǎng	coming and going
qǐdiǎnzhàn	station where a train originates (literally, "starting station")
shūfu	to be comfortable



Train from Guǎngzhōu at the entrance to China

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?                   What time does it leave?  
B: Shíbādiǎn wúshiwǔfēn fā chē.       It departs at 1855.  
A: Nà hǎo.                                 That's fine.

Note on No. 1

Kāi and fā chē: When referring to trains, the verb kāi, "to start," means "to start off" or "to leave." The technical term fā chē, "to send out the train," is used in reference to a train which is departing from the terminal at the beginning of a trip, or line.

2. B: Qǐng ni bǎ nǐde hùzhào hé         Please give me your passport and  
      lǚxíngzhèng gěi wo.                 travel permit.  
A: Hǎo, gěi ni.                         Okay, here it is.

Notes on No. 2

Hé, "and," is a common alternate to gēn. Both hé and gēn are used as "and" between nouns.

Bǎ nǐde hùzhào...: The prepositional verb bǎ points out the direct objects (passport and travel permit) and brings those objects to the beginning of the sentence, preceding the main verb. Without this construction, a "traffic jam" of sentence elements would follow that verb.

3. A: Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài         On which platform is the train  
      dìjǐ zhàntái?                         to Shànghǎi?  
B: Zài dìyī zhàntái.                     It's on Platform Number 1.

4. B: Bú yǒng jí. Hái zǎo ne. No need to be anxious. It's still early.  
B: Nǐ xiān zài zhèige jiēdàishì xiūxi. First, rest a bit in this waiting room.

Notes on No. 4

In exchange 4, the aspect marker ne emphasizes that there has been no change in the situation.

Tā zài zhèr ne. He is here.

When the adverb hái, "still," "yet," is used, the sentence very often ends with the marker ne.

Míngtiān wǒ hái bù zǒu ne. I am not leaving tomorrow (yet).  
(i.e., I will still be here tomorrow.)

Verb reduplication: In Unit 3 of the Money Module, you learned that reduplication is one way to indicate ASPECT, although markers are more common. INDEFINITENESS is the aspect expressed when an action verb is reduplicated. The speaker does not commit himself to the duration or extent of the action.

In the last sentence of No. 4, the speaker asks the listener to "rest a bit." Instead of using additional words to indicate a short duration, the speaker reduplicates the verb, xiūxi, expressing some duration, but of no particular limit.

To reduplicate a two-syllable verb, simply repeat the whole verb. The repetition is unstressed, or even toneless: xiūxi

Xiān: Since this use of "first" is not followed by an explicit "afterwards," xiān might also be translated as "for the time being" or "right now."

Wǒ xiān zǒu le, nǐmen mànmanr chī ba. Right now I'm going to excuse myself; you take your time eating.

Nǐ xiān bié jí, mànmanr zhǎo. For the time being, don't be anxious; take your time looking for it.

5. A: Wǒ zhèijiàn xíngli zěnmē bān? What do I do about this suitcase  
 Shì bu shì kéyì nǎshàng of mine? May I take it onto  
 chē qu? the train?  
 B: Kéyì bǎ xíngli nǎshàng You may take the suitcase onto  
 chē qu. the train.

Notes on No. 5

Zěnmē bān means something like "how should [something] be managed" or "what should be done [about something]."

Nǎshàng chē qu, "take onto the train," is a COMPOUND VERB OF DIRECTION which has been separated by a noun object. Ná is the verb "to pick up," "to hold," "to take," "to bring." The directional endings -shàng, "up," "onto,"\* and qù, "to go," tell you that the action takes place up and away from the speaker.

ná	shang	qu	"to take up/onto"
(hold	up/onto	away)	

Compound verbs of direction are easily formed, as shown in the chart below. The first column contains action verbs you have learned which may be used. The endings in the middle column are relatively few. For the second part of the directional ending, only lái and qù may be used.

<u>ACTION</u>	plus	<u>DIRECTION</u>
ná (to carry)	-shàng (up)	lái (towards)
zǒu (to walk/go)	-xià (down)	qù (away)
bān (to move)	-chū (out)	
pǎo (to run)	-jìn (in)	
kāi (to drive)	-huí (back)	
(AND OTHERS)		

Compound verbs of direction may be two or three syllables: chūqu, "to go out"; zǒuchūqu, "to walk out"

\*You have seen shàng used as several different parts of speech:

shàng lóu	to go up (FULL VERB)
shàng chē	to get on
shàngbianr	upper, above (IN PLACE WORDS)
shàngge yuè	last, previously (SPECIFIER)
zài chēshàng	on (LOCATIONAL ENDING [with nouns])
nǎshàngqu	up, onto (DIRECTIONAL ENDING [with verbs])

It is possible to split up a two-part directional ending by placing an object or location before the final lái or qù.

náshang chē qu	take onto the train/bus
náchu yīběn shū lai	bring out a book
xià lóu qu	go downstairs

A direct object (such as nèiběn shū) may be placed EITHER at the beginning of a sentence, using bǎ, OR later in the sentence, splitting up the directional ending. Locations which are the goal of the action (such as chē and lóu above) MUST be placed between the two parts of the directional ending.

Bǎ xīngli náshang chē qu: In the last sentence of exchange 5, the direct object, xīngli, is placed before the verb. The location of the action, chē, is placed before the final qu. When both a location and a direct object occur in a sentence with a multisyllabic directional verb, the location is placed between the two syllables of the directional ending, and the direct object is moved closer to the beginning of the sentence.

- |                                     |                                                          |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 6. A: Zhèibān chē yǒu cānchē ba?    | This train has a dining car, I suppose?                  |
| B: Yǒu. Yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu Xīcān. | Yes. There's Chinese food and there's also Western food. |
| A: Hǎojíle.                         | Great.                                                   |

Note on No. 6

The ending -jíle, meaning "extremely," "awfully," may be added to adjectival verbs.

Nèige píngguo dàjíle.	That apple is huge.
Zuò huǒchē fāngbianjíle.	Riding the train is extremely convenient.
Tā zǒude kuàijíle.	He walks awfully fast.

-jíle is seldom used in Taiwan.

- |                                          |                                        |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 7. C: Xià yízhàn jiù shì<br>Shànghǎi le. | The next station is Shànghǎi.          |
| C: Kuài yào dào zhàn le.                 | We are about to arrive at the station. |
| C: Nín zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.               | Please get ready to get off the train. |

Notes on No. 7

Kuài means "soon" in the second sentence of exchange 7. You have already learned another meaning for kuài: "to be fast"

In the sentence Kuài yào dào zhàn le, yào is an auxiliary verb meaning "will" or "to be going to." Other meanings you have learned for yào are "to want," "to need," "to have to," "to require."

New-situation le: The aspect marker le for new situations occurs in the first two sentences of No. 7. In Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le, the speaker uses le to communicate a change in the circumstances: after passing through many stations, Shànghǎi will finally be the next station.

When a speaker uses le, he is saying that something has changed in reference to him or in reference to the listener. In the first sentence in No. 7, Shànghǎi itself has not changed, but what constitutes the "next station" for the speaker and the listener has changed.

In Kuài yào dào zhàn le, new-situation le marks a change which is about to take place--their arrival. Here are examples of references to future changes:

- |                            |                                         |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Tā míngnián jiù shísuì le. | He will be ten (years old) next year.   |
| Wǒ zǒu le.                 | I'm leaving now. (I'll be leaving now.) |
| Piào kuài yào màiwán le.   | The tickets will soon be sold out.      |

Many speakers of English have trouble with new-situation le because they would not think of using it when the Chinese do. Take note of situations which the Chinese consider to be changes, and try to use new-situation le in your speech.

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                 |                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?<br/>(cue) huǒchē<br/>(What time does it<br/>leave?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Nèibān huǒchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?<br/>(What time does that train<br/>leave?)</p> |
| <p>2. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?<br/>gōnglùjúde chē</p>                                                  | <p>Nèibān gōnglùjúde chē jǐdiǎn zhōng<br/>kāi?</p>                                            |
| <p>3. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?<br/>gōnggòng qìchē</p>                                                  | <p>Nèibān gōnggòng qìchē jǐdiǎn zhōng<br/>kāi?</p>                                            |
| <p>4. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi? zhídáchē</p>                                                            | <p>Nèibān zhídáchē jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?</p>                                                      |
| <p>5. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi? tèkuài</p>                                                              | <p>Nèibān tèkuài jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?</p>                                                        |
| <p>6. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?<br/>yínháng</p>                                                     | <p>Nèige yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?</p>                                                    |
| <p>7. Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi mén?<br/>yóuzhèngjú</p>                                                  | <p>Nèige yóuzhèngjú jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi<br/>mén?</p>                                             |

B. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                              |                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Zuò sìdiǎn zhōngde chē,<br/>láidejí ma?<br/>(cue) no<br/>(Can we make the four<br/>o'clock train?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Láibují, yǐjīng wǎn le.<br/>(We can't make it; we are<br/>already late.)</p> |
| <p>OR Zuò sìdiǎn zhōngde chē,<br/>láidejí ma?<br/>(cue) yes<br/>(Can we make the four<br/>o'clock train?)</p>                | <p>Láidejí, hái zǎo ne.<br/>(Don't worry. It's still<br/>early.)</p>                        |
| <p>2. Zuò jiǔdiǎn èrshífēnde chē,<br/>láidejí ma? no</p>                                                                     | <p>Láibují, yǐjīng wǎn le.</p>                                                              |
| <p>3. Zuò shídiǎn wǔshífēnde chē,<br/>láidejí ma? yes</p>                                                                    | <p>Láidejí, hái zǎo ne.</p>                                                                 |



- |                                                     |                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 4. Zuò qīdiǎn wúshífēnde chē,<br>láidejí ma? no     | Láibují, yǐjīng wǎn le. |
| 5. Zuò sìdiǎn língwǔfēnde chē,<br>láidejí ma? yes   | Láidejí, hái zǎo ne.    |
| 6. Zuò liǎngdiǎn língbāfēnde chē,<br>láidejí ma? no | Láibují, yǐjīng wǎn le. |

C. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                       |                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zài dìjǐ zhàntái?<br>(cue) Shànghǎi<br>(On which platform is it?) | <u>You</u> : Dào Shànghǎi qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?<br>(On which platform is the train to Shànghǎi?) |
| 2. Zài dìsān zhàntái. Nánjīng                                                         | Dào Nánjīng qùde chē zài dìsān zhàntái.                                                               |
| 3. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái? Guǎngzhōu                                                        | Dào Guǎngzhōu qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?                                                              |
| 4. Zài dìèr zhàntái. Tiānjīn                                                          | Dào Tiānjīn qùde chē zài dìèr zhàntái.                                                                |
| 5. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái? Qīngdǎo                                                          | Dào Qīngdǎo qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?                                                                |
| 6. Zài dìyī zhàntái. Hángzhōu                                                         | Dào Hángzhōu qùde chē zài dìyī zhàntái.                                                               |
| 7. Zài dìjǐ zhàntái? Běijīng                                                          | Dào Běijīng qùde chē zài dìjǐ zhàntái?                                                                |

D. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèr xiūxiuxi.<br>(cue) zhèige dìfang<br>(Excuse me, I must rest here a moment.) | <u>You</u> : Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèige dìfang xiūxiuxi.<br>(Excuse me, I must rest at this place a moment.) |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

- |                                                         |                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 2. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèige<br>dìfang xiūxi. jiālǐ    | Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài jiāli xiūxi-<br>xiuxi. |
| 3. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài jiāli xiūxi-<br>xiuxi. fàndiànli | Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài fàndiànli<br>xiūxi.    |
| 4. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài fàndiànli<br>xiūxi. chēli        | Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài chēli xiūxi-<br>xiuxi. |
| 5. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài chēli xiūxi-<br>xiuxi. jiēdàishì | Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài jiēdàishì<br>xiūxi.    |
| 6. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài jiēdàishì<br>xiūxi. zhèr         | Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèr xiūxi-<br>xiuxi.  |
| 7. Duìbuqǐ, wǒ děi zài zhèr xiūxi-<br>xiuxi.            |                                            |

E. Expansion Drill

Repeat the speaker's statements and add Zěnme bàn? or Zěnme zǒu? as appropriate.

- |                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker:</u> Wǒ zhèijiàn xíngli hái<br>zài zhèr.<br>(This suitcase of mine<br>is still here.) | <u>You:</u> Wǒ zhèijiàn xíngli hái zài<br>zhèr. Zěnme bàn?<br>(This suitcase of mine is still<br>here. What should I do about<br>it?) |
| OR Tā yào dào nàr qù.<br>(He wants to go there.)                                                    | Tā yào dào nàr qù. Zěnme zǒu?<br>(He wants to go there. How<br>do I get there [go]?)                                                  |
| 2. Wǒ zhèixiē dōngxi hái zài zhèr.                                                                  | Wǒ zhèixiē dōngxi hái zài zhèr.<br>Zěnme bàn?                                                                                         |
| 3. Tā yào dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù.                                                                  | Tā yào dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē qù.<br>Zěnme zǒu?                                                                                         |
| 4. Wǒ nèixiē xíngli hái zài<br>chēshang.                                                            | Wǒ nèixiē xíngli hái zài chēshang.<br>Zěnme bàn?                                                                                      |
| 5. Tā yào dào Shànghǎi qù.                                                                          | Tā yào dào Shànghǎi qù. Zěnme zǒu?                                                                                                    |
| 6. Wǒ zhèixiē zázhi hái méi màiwán.                                                                 | Wǒ zhèixiē zázhi hái méi màiwán.<br>Zěnme bàn?                                                                                        |

F. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tāmen yǒu Zhōngcān<br>háishi Xīcān?<br>(cue) yě<br>(Do they have Chinese<br>food or Western food?) | <u>You</u> : Tāmen yǒu Zhōngcān, yě yǒu<br>Xīcān.<br>(They have Chinese food and<br>they also have Western food.) |
| OR Tāmen yào zhèige háishi<br>nèige?<br>(cue) dōu<br>(Do they want this or<br>that?)                                   | Zhèige, nèige, tāmen dōu yào.<br>(They want both this and that.)                                                  |
| 2. Nǐmen mǎi zhuōzi háishi yǐzi?<br>yě                                                                                 | Wǒmen mǎi zhuōzi, yě mǎi yǐzi.                                                                                    |
| 3. Nǐmen mǎi pánzi háishi wǎn?<br>dōu                                                                                  | Pánzi, wǎn, wǒmen dōu mǎi.                                                                                        |
| 4. Tāmen mǎi zhèige hóngde háishi<br>nèige lánde? dōu                                                                  | Hóngde, lánde, tāmen dōu mǎi.                                                                                     |
| 5. Tāmen kàn zhèixiē zázhi háishi<br>nèixiē bào? yě                                                                    | Tāmen kàn zhèixiē zázhi, yě kàn<br>nèixiē bào.                                                                    |
| 6. Nǐ niàn jīngjixué háishi<br>zhèngzhixué? yě                                                                         | Wǒ niàn jīngjixué, yě niàn<br>zhèngzhixué.                                                                        |

G. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                               |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Kuài yào dào zhàn le.<br>(We are about to arrive<br>at the station.) | <u>You</u> : Kuài yào dào zhàn le. Wǒmen<br>zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.<br>(We are about to arrive at the<br>station. Let's get ready<br>to get off.) |
| 2. Xià yízhàn jiù shì Běijīng le.                                                        | Xià yízhàn jiù shì Běijīng le.<br>Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.                                                                                   |
| 3. Kuài yào dào Tiānjīn le.                                                              | Kuài yào dào Tiānjīn le. Wǒmen<br>zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.                                                                                         |
| 4. Xià yízhàn jiù shì Nánjīng le.                                                        | Xià yízhàn jiù shì Nánjīng le.<br>Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.                                                                                   |

5. Kuài yào dào Hángzhōu le.

Kuài yào dào Hángzhōu le. Wǒmen  
zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

6. Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le.

Xià yízhàn jiù shì Shànghǎi le.  
Wǒmen zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

7. Kuài yào dào Guǎngzhōu le.

Kuài yào dào Guǎngzhōu le. Wǒmen  
zhǔnbèi xià chē ba.

H. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Tā keyi nǎshànglái ma?  
(cue) chē  
(Can he bring it?)

You: Tā keyi nǎshàng chē lái ma?  
(Can he bring it in the car?)

2. Tā keyi nǎxiàlái ma? lóu

Tā keyi nǎxià lóu lái ma?

3. Tā keyi nǎshàngqù ma? huǒchē

Tā keyi nǎshàng huǒchē qù ma?

4. Tā keyi nǎshànglái ma? lóu

Tā keyi nǎshàng lóu lái ma?

5. Tā keyi nǎxiàqù ma? chē

Tā keyi nǎxià chē qù ma?

6. Tā keyi nǎxiàlái ma? huǒchē

Tā keyi nǎxià huǒchē lái ma?

7. Tā keyi nǎshàngqù ma? lóu

Tā keyi nǎshàng lóu qù ma?

## UNIT 7

### REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

- |                                                                                                |                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. A: Lǎo Sòng, zěnmeyàng?<br>Máng ne?                                                         | Sòng, how are things going?<br>Are you busy?                                      |
| B: Bù zěnmé máng.<br>Nǐ yǒu shì ma?                                                            | Not especially busy.<br>Can I do something for you?                               |
| 2. A: Wǒ Sìyue Shísìhào yào dào<br>Guǎngzhōu qù. Qǐng nǐ<br>gěi wǒ dīng yìzhāng fēijī<br>piào. | I'm going to Guǎngzhōu on April 14.<br>Please reserve a plane ticket for<br>me.   |
| B: Hǎo                                                                                         | Sure.                                                                             |
| 3. B: Piào dīnghǎo le.                                                                         | The ticket has been reserved.                                                     |
| A: Něibān fēijī?<br>Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?                                                        | Which flight? What time does it<br>take off?                                      |
| B: Jiǔdiǎn shíwǔfēn qǐfēi.                                                                     | It takes off at 9:15.                                                             |
| 4. A: Zhèibān fēijī zhí fēi<br>Guǎngzhōu ma?                                                   | Does this flight go directly to<br>Guǎngzhōu?                                     |
| B: Shì, zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu.                                                                     | Yes, it flies directly to Guǎngzhōu.                                              |
| 5. A: Cóng Sānlǐtún dào fēijīchǎng<br>yào duōshao shíjiān?                                     | How much time does it take to go<br>from Sānlǐtún to the airport?                 |
| B: Yào sìshífēn zhōng.                                                                         | It takes forty minutes.                                                           |
| 6. A: Rúguo wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi<br>jiā, láiidejí ba?                                         | If I leave home at eight o'clock,<br>I can make it in time. Right?                |
| B: Láidejí.                                                                                    | Yes.                                                                              |
| 7. A: Qǐng nǐ míngtiān zǎoshang<br>pài ge chē lái jiē wǒ.                                      | Please send a car to pick me up<br>tomorrow morning.                              |
| B: Hǎo. Wǒ míngtiān bādiǎn<br>zhōng pài chē sòng nǐ dào<br>fēijīchǎng qu.                      | Okay. I'll send a car at eight<br>o'clock tomorrow to take you to<br>the airport. |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                 |                                                                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8. -hǎo le      | to be satisfactorily completed                                                   |
| 9. lǔguǎn       | hotel                                                                            |
| 10. shuōhǎo le  | to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on   |
| 11. xiǎnghǎo le | to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out |
| 12. yàoshi      | if (alternate word for <u>rúguǒ</u> )                                            |
| 13. zuòhǎo le   | to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished                |

## VOCABULARY

bù zěnmē	not especially, not particularly
dīng	to reserve
dīnghǎo le	to have (been) reserved
fēi	to fly
fēijī	airplane
fēijīchǎng	airport
Guǎngzhōu	(name of a city in the PRC--Canton)
-hǎo le	to be satisfactorily completed
jiē	to meet/pick up/get (someone)
lǎo	to be old in years
lǔguǎn	hotel
máng	to be busy
pài	to send/assign (a person to do something)
qǐfēi	to take off (airplane)
rúguǒ (rúguo)	if
Sānlǐtún	(a district in Běijīng where many Foreign diplomats and Chinese people from other countries live)
shuōhǎo le	to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on
xiǎnghǎo le	to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out
yàoshi	if
zhí	directly
zuòhǎo le	to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished

(introduced on C-2 tape)

chū chāi	to go on a business trip
chùzhǎng	division chief
gǎnbushàng	won't be able to catch (a plane, train, etc.)
hǎi hǎo	fairly good/well
kāi huì	to attend a meeting/conference



Shànghǎi-made jeep and other vehicles in a parking lot outside the train station in Guǎngzhōu



## REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Lǎo Sòng, zěnmeyàng? Máng ne?      Sòng, how are things going? Are you busy?  
 B: Bù zěnmé máng. Nǐ yǒu shì ma?      Not especially busy. Can I do something for you?

Notes on No. 1

The greeting zěnmeyàng is more informal than nǐ hǎo a. Zěnmeyàng is used only if the two people already know each other.

Máng ne? and Máng ma? are translated into English as "Are you busy?" However, the two Chinese questions are not interchangeable. When a speaker asks the question Máng ma? he really wants to find out whether someone is busy. On the other hand, Máng ne? is an example of the Chinese custom of greeting a person by stating the obvious. The speaker is simply acknowledging the fact that the listener is busy. The question mark following Máng ne? shows that the speaker is inviting the listener to comment. You might think of Máng ne? as something like the English "Well, it looks like you are working hard," which invites a response like "Sure am" or "Oh, I'm really not doing much of anything."

Ne may be used in many sentences to comment on what the person being addressed is doing at the moment:

Chī fàn ne?	Having dinner, I see?
Zài zhèr ne?	Well, you're here?
Mǎi dōngxì ne?	Doing some shopping, eh?

These sentences are almost greetings in themselves.

The overall intonation of the question Máng ma? is higher than that of a statement. The intonation of Máng ne? is somewhat lower. Listen carefully to the tape.

Bù zěnmé may precede a state verb. The expression would then mean "not especially," "not particularly."

Wǒ bù zěnmé xǐhuan nèiběn shū.	I don't particularly like that book.
Wǒ bù zěnmé qīngchu.	I'm not particularly clear on this. (This isn't very clear to me.)
Wǒ jīntiān bù zěnmé hǎo.	I'm not particularly well today.
Tā bù zěnmé yǒu qián.	He's not especially rich.
Wǒ bù zěnmé xiǎng qù.	I don't especially want to go.

Contrast bù zěnmé with bú zěnmé, "not as much as that":

Wǒ bú zěnmé xǐhuan kàn diànyǐngr.	I don't like to go to the movies <u>that</u> much. (i.e., as much as someone else just mentioned)
-----------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

Wǒ bù zěnme xǐhuan kàn diànyǐngr. I don't particularly like to go to the movies.

2. A: Wǒ Sìyue Shísìhào yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù. Qǐng ni gěi wo dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào. I'm going to Guǎngzhōu on April 14. Please reserve a plane ticket for me.

B: Hǎo. Sure.

3. B: Piào dìnghǎo le. The ticket has been reserved.  
A: Nǎibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi? Which flight? What time does it take off?  
B: Jiǔdiǎn shíwǔfēn qǐfēi. It takes off at 9:15.

Note on No. 3

Dìnghǎo is a compound verb of result. When used as the final element in a compound verb of result, hǎo indicates that the action described by the initial verb has been brought to a successful conclusion.

The same form of the verb, dìnghǎo, is used to describe an object having something done to it and a person doing something to an object.

Piào dìnghǎo le. The ticket has been reserved.

Wǒ bǎ piào dìnghǎo le. I have reserved the ticket.

Here are additional examples of compounds with the result-ending -hǎo:

Wǒmen yǐjīng shuōhǎo le. We have already come to an agreement about it. (We have already talked it out to a conclusion.)

Nǐ xiǎnghǎo le meiyǒu? Have you reached a conclusion yet? (Have you thought it out to a conclusion yet?)

Wǒ yǐjīng bǎ jīntiān wǎnshāng yào chīde dōngxī zuòhǎo le. I have already finished making the things we are going to eat tonight.

Nǐde xíngli zhǔnbèihǎo le ma? Is your luggage ready?

4. A: Zhèibān fēijǐ zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu ma? Does this flight go directly to Guangzhou?  
B: Shì, zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu. Yes, it flies directly to Guangzhou.

Notes on No. 4

Zhèibān fēijǐ, "this flight": In Chinese, the specifier zhèi- is used to refer to what has just been talked about. In English, "that" and "the" are used for the same purpose.

The adverb zhí is not used in as many situations as is its English translation, "directly," "straight." In other contexts, the word for "directly" or "direct" would be zhíjiē, and the word for "straight" would be yìzhí.

5. A: Cóng Sānlítún dào fēijīchǎng yào duōshao shíjiān? How much time does it take to go from Sānlítún to the airport?  
B: Yào sìshífēn zhōng. It takes forty minutes.
6. A: Rúguo wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ba? If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?  
B: Láidejí. Yes.

Note on No. 6

Rúguo is one of the commonest words in Chinese for "if." Another widely used word for "if" is yàoshi. (See Additional Required Vocabulary, No. 12.) You have already learned that the idea of "if" may be conveyed in Chinese without any special word:

Zuò Gōnglùjú dǐ xiān mǎi piào ma?

If I take the bus, is it necessary to buy tickets ahead of time?

Bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā láidejí ba?

If I leave home at eight o'clock, I can make it in time. Right?

7. A: Qǐng ni míngtiān zǎoshang pài ge chē lái jìe wǒ. Please send a car to pick me up tomorrow morning.  
 B: Hǎo. Wǒ míngtiān bādiǎn zhōng pài chē sòng ni dào fēijīchǎng qu. Okay. I'll send a car at eight o'clock tomorrow to take you to the airport.

Notes on No. 7

The verb pài means "to send/assign someone [to do something]."

Ge: You have already learned that, when toneless, yige means "a," not "one." In the first sentence of exchange 7, you see that yige can be reduced to the one syllable ge. This reduction happens most frequently when "a" follows the sentence verb.

zhǎo ge rén	to look for someone (i.e., a person)
chī ge píngguǒ	to eat an apple

The verb jiē means "to meet," as in "meeting someone at the station," or "to get," "to pick up," as in "I'll come by to get you (pick you up) about eight o'clock."

Pài ge chē lái jìe wǒ, literally "send a car to come pick me up": In English, "come" may be omitted. In Chinese, lái must separate the action (pài ge chē) from the purpose of the action (jiē wǒ). Either lái or qù may be used to mark purpose expressions, depending on the direction of the action.

The verb sòng means "to take/escort someone" in the last sentence of exchange 7. Sòng may also mean "to send" in the sense of "delivering an object," in contrast with the verb pài, which means "to send a person."

Qǐng pài ge rén dào wǒ jiā lái. Please send a man over to my house.

Qǐng bǎ zhuōzi sòng dào wǒ jiā qù. Please deliver the table to my house.

- |                 |                                                                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8. -hǎo le      | to be satisfactorily completed                                                   |
| 9. lǚguǎn       | hotel                                                                            |
| 10. shuōhǎo le  | to have come to an agreement (about something); (something) has been agreed on   |
| 11. xiǎnghǎo le | to have reached a conclusion (about something); (something) has been thought out |
| 12. yàoshi      | if (alternate word for <u>rúguǒ</u> )                                            |
| 13. zuòhǎo le   | to have finished doing (something); (something) has been finished                |

Note on Additional Required Vocabulary

Lǚguǎn is the general term for any kind of hotel. When following a verb or the prepositional verb zài, lǚguǎn may be followed by the locational ending -lǐ, "in," or there may be no locative ending. This is also the case with other place words naming institutions, business establishments, and organizations.

Tā zài zhèige lǚguǎnli (OR  
zài zhèige lǚguǎn) zhùle  
liǎngge yuè.

He stayed in this hotel for two  
months.

## VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Animals

bear	xióng
camel	luòtuó
cat	māo
chicken	jī
cow	niú
deer	lù
dog	gǒu
donkey	lǔ
duck	yā
elephant	xiàng
fish	yú
fox	húli
goat	shānyáng
horse	mǎ
lion	shīzi
monkey	hóuzi
mouse/rat	lǎoshǔ
panda	xióngmāo
pig	zhū
sheep	yáng
tiger	lǎohǔ
turkey	huǒjī
wolf	láng

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                           |                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Qǐng ni gěi wo mǎi yìzhāng chuán piào.<br/>(Please buy one boat ticket for me.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Qǐng ni gěi wo dīng yìzhāng chuán piào.<br/>(Please reserve one boat ticket for me.)</p> |
| <p>2. Qǐng ni gěi Mǎ Xiānsheng mǎi liǎngzhāng huǒchē piào.</p>                                            | <p>Qǐng ni gěi Mǎ Xiānsheng dīng liǎngzhāng huǒchē piào.</p>                                            |
| <p>3. Qǐng ni gěi Máo Tàitai mǎi yìzhāng gōnglùjúde chēpiào.</p>                                          | <p>Qǐng ni gěi Máo Tàitai dīng yìzhāng gōnglùjúde chēpiào.</p>                                          |
| <p>4. Qǐng ni gěi Lín Xiǎojiě mǎi sānzhāng zhídáchēde chēpiào.</p>                                        | <p>Qǐng ni gěi Lín Xiǎojiě dīng sānzhāng zhídáchēde chēpiào.</p>                                        |
| <p>5. Qǐng ni gěi Liú Nǚshì mǎi sānzhāng tèkuàichēde chēpiào.</p>                                         | <p>Qǐng ni gěi Liú Nǚshì dīng sānzhāng tèkuàichēde chēpiào.</p>                                         |
| <p>6. Qǐng ni gěi Zhōu Xiānsheng mǎi liǎngzhāng fēijī piào.</p>                                           | <p>Qǐng ni gěi Zhōu Xiānsheng dīng liǎngzhāng fēijī piào.</p>                                           |
| <p>7. Qǐng ni gěi Zhào Tàitai mǎi liǎngzhāng chuán piào.</p>                                              | <p>Qǐng ni gěi Zhào Tàitai dīng liǎngzhāng chuán piào.</p>                                              |

B. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wǒ yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù.<br/>(cue) huǒchē piào<br/>(I want to go to Guǎngzhōu.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Wǒ yào dào Guǎngzhōu qù, keyi bu keyi dīng yìzhāng huǒchē piào?<br/>(I want to go to Guǎngzhōu. May I reserve a train ticket?)</p> |
| <p>2. Wǒ yào dào Běijīng qù. fēijī piào</p>                                                               | <p>Wǒ yào dào Běijīng qù, keyi bu keyi dīng yìzhāng fēijī piào?</p>                                                                               |
| <p>3. Wǒ yào dào Nánjīng qù. tèkuàichēde piào</p>                                                         | <p>Wǒ yào dào Nánjīng qù, keyi bu keyi dīng yìzhāng tèkuàichēde piào?</p>                                                                         |
| <p>4. Wǒ yào dào Qīngdǎo qù. chuán piào</p>                                                               | <p>Wǒ yào dào Qīngdǎo qù, keyi bu keyi dīng yìzhāng chuán piào?</p>                                                                               |
| <p>5. Wǒ yào dào Tiānjīn qù. qìchē piào</p>                                                               | <p>Wǒ yào dào Tiānjīn qù, keyi bu keyi dīng yìzhāng qìchē piào?</p>                                                                               |

6. Wǒ yào dào Hángzhōu qù.  
fēijī piào

Wǒ yào dào Hángzhōu qù, kēyǐ bu kēyǐ  
dìng yìzhāng fēijī piào?

7. Wǒ yào dào Sūzhōu qù.  
zhídáchēde piào

Wǒ yào dào Sūzhōu qù, kēyǐ bu kēyǐ  
dìng yìzhāng zhídáchēde piào?

C. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Zuòhǎo le ma?  
(cue) no  
(Have you finished  
doing it?)

You: Méi zuòhǎo ne.  
(I haven't finished doing it.)

2. Shuōhǎo le ma? yes

Shuōhǎo le.

3. Xiǎnghǎo le ma? soon

Kuài xiǎnghǎo le.

4. Dìnghǎo le ma? not yet

Hái méi dìnghǎo ne.

5. Shuōhǎo le ma? no

Méi shuōhǎo ne.

6. Zuòhǎo le ma? soon

Kuài zuòhǎo le.

7. Xiǎnghǎo le ma? not yet

Hái méi xiǎnghǎo ne.

D. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Něibān fēijī?  
(Which flight?)

You: Něibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng  
qǐfēi?  
(Which flight? What time does  
it take off?)

OR Něibān huǒchē?  
(Which train?)

Něibān huǒchē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng  
kāi?  
(Which train? What time does  
it leave?)

2. Něibān qìchē?

Něibān qìchē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?

3. Něibān fēijī?

Něibān fēijī? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?



- |                      |                                     |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 4. Něibān zhídáchē?  | Něibān zhídáchē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi?  |
| 5. Něibān tèkuàichē? | Něibān tèkuàichē? Jǐdiǎn zhōng kāi? |
| 6. Něibān fēiji?     | Něibān fēiji? Jǐdiǎn zhōng qǐfēi?   |

E. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                                          |                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Guǎngzhōu ma?<br>(cue) Nánjīng<br>(Does this flight go directly to Guǎngzhōu?) | <u>You</u> : Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Nánjīng ma?<br>(Does this flight go directly to Nánjīng?) |
| 2. Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Nánjīng ma? Shànghǎi                                                                            | Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Shànghǎi ma?                                                           |
| 3. Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Shànghǎi ma? Běijīng                                                                            | Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Běijīng ma?                                                            |
| 4. Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Běijīng ma? Wǔhàn                                                                               | Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Wǔhàn ma?                                                              |
| 5. Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Wǔhàn ma? Sūzhōu                                                                                | Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Sūzhōu ma?                                                             |
| 6. Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Sūzhōu ma? Qīngdǎo                                                                              | Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Qīngdǎo ma?                                                            |
| 7. Zhèibān fēiji zhí fēi Qīngdǎo ma?                                                                                     |                                                                                              |

F. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Cóng Sānlǐtún dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshao shíjiān?<br>(cue) duōshaofēn zhōng<br>(How much time does it take to go from Sānlǐtún to the train station?) | <u>You</u> : Cóng Sānlǐtún dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshaofēn zhōng?<br>(How many minutes from Sānlǐtún to the train station?) |
| 2. Cóng Dōngdān dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yào duōshao shíjiān?<br>duōshao shíhou                                                                                               | Cóng Dōngdān dào Wángfǔjǐng Dàjiē yào duōshao shíhou?                                                                     |
| 3. Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Rìtánlù yào duōshao shíjiān?<br>jǐfēn zhōng                                                                                                       | Cóng Chángān Jiē dào Rìtánlù yào jǐfēn zhōng?                                                                             |
| 4. Cóng Běijīng dào Guǎngzhōu yào duōshao shíjiān? jǐtiān                                                                                                                 | Cóng Běijīng dào Guǎngzhōu yào jǐtiān?                                                                                    |
| 5. Cóng Nánjīng dào Shànghǎi yào duōshao shíjiān?<br>duōshao xiǎoshí                                                                                                      | Cóng Nánjīng dào Shànghǎi yào duōshao xiǎoshí?                                                                            |
| 6. Cóng Hángzhōu dào Guǎngzhōu yào duōshao shíjiān?<br>duōshao xiǎoshí                                                                                                    | Cóng Hángzhōu dào Guǎngzhōu yào duōshao xiǎoshí?                                                                          |
| 7. Cóng Guānghuáilù dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshao shíjiān?<br>duōshaofēn zhōng                                                                                               | Cóng Guānghuáilù dào huǒchēzhàn yào duōshaofēn zhōng?                                                                     |

G. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Rúguǒ wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ma?<br>(If I leave home at eight o'clock, can I make it?) | <u>You</u> : Rúguǒ wǒ bādiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, shénme shíhou dào?<br>(If I leave home at eight o'clock, what time will I arrive?) |
| 2. Rúguǒ wǒ shídiǎn zhōng líkāi xuéxiào, láidejí ma?                                                                   | Rúguǒ wǒ shídiǎn zhōng líkāi xuéxiào, shénme shíhou dào?                                                                         |

- |                                                                     |                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3. Rúguǒ Lǐ Xiānsheng shíyīdiǎn shífēn líkāi Dàshiguǎn, láidejí ma? | Rúguǒ Lǐ Xiānsheng shíyīdiǎn shífēn líkāi Dàshiguǎn, shénme shíhou dào? |
| 4. Rúguǒ Zhāng Nǚshì shíyuè qíhào líkāi zhèli, láidejí ma?          | Rúguǒ Zhāng Nǚshì shíyuè qíhào líkāi zhèli, shénme shíhou dào?          |
| 5. Rúguǒ tā sìdiǎnbàn líkāi fàndiàn, láidejí ma?                    | Rúguǒ tā sìdiǎnbàn líkāi fàndiàn, shénme shíhou dào?                    |
| 6. Rúguǒ nǐ zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, láidejí ma?            | Rúguǒ nǐ zǎoshang qīdiǎn zhōng líkāi jiā, shénme shíhou dào?            |
| 7. Rúguǒ tāmen xiànzài líkāi chēzhàn, láidejí ma?                   | Rúguǒ tāmen xiànzài líkāi chēzhàn, shénme shíhou dào?                   |

H. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                     |                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Qǐng ni lái lái jiē wo.<br>(Please pick me up.) | <u>You</u> : Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái lái jiē wo.<br>(Please send a car to pick me up.) |
| 2. Qǐng ni lái lái jiē ta.                                          | Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái lái jiē ta.                                                    |
| 3. Qǐng ni qù jiē tamen.                                            | Qǐng ni pài ge chē qù jiē tamen.                                                      |
| 4. Qǐng ni qù jiē ta.                                               | Qǐng ni pài ge chē qù jiē ta.                                                         |
| 5. Qǐng ni sòng wo qù.                                              | Qǐng ni pài ge chē sòng wo qù.                                                        |
| 6. Qǐng ni lái lái jiē ta.                                          | Qǐng ni pài ge chē lái lái jiē ta.                                                    |
| 7. Qǐng ni sòng tamen qù.                                           | Qǐng ni pài ge chē sòng tamen qù.                                                     |

I. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                            |                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ sòng ni dào<br>fēijīchǎng qù.<br>(I'll take you to the<br>airport.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ pài chē sòng ni dào<br>fēijīchǎng qù.<br>(I'll send a car to take you<br>to the airport.) |
| 2. Wǒ sòng ni dào huǒchēzhàn qù.                                                           | Wǒ pài chē sòng ni dào huǒchēzhàn<br>qù.                                                                  |
| 3. Wǒ sòng ni dào qìchēzhàn qù.                                                            | Wǒ pài chē sòng ni dào qìchēzhàn<br>qù.                                                                   |
| 4. Wǒ sòng ni dào tā jiā qù.                                                               | Wǒ pài chē sòng ni dào tā jiā qù.                                                                         |
| 5. Wǒ sòng ni dào yínháng qù.                                                              | Wǒ pài chē sòng ni dào yínháng qù.                                                                        |
| 6. Wǒ sòng ni dào dàshiguǎn qù.                                                            | Wǒ pài chē sòng ni dào dàshiguǎn<br>qù.                                                                   |
| 7. Wǒ sòng ni dào fēijīchǎng qù.                                                           | Wǒ pài chē sòng ni dào fēijīchǎng<br>qù.                                                                  |

UNIT 8

REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

- |                                                                                            |                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. B: Hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn, nín chū mén le ba?                                                 | I haven't seen you for a long time. You have been away, I suppose?                                       |
| A: Shì a, wǒ yòu dào Guǎngzhōu qù le.                                                      | Yes, I went to Guǎngzhōu again.                                                                          |
| 2. B: Nín wèishénme gāng huīlai, yòu qù le ne?                                             | Why did you go again when you had just come back from there?                                             |
| A: Wǒ zhèicì dào Guǎngzhōu qù shì yīnwei wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái. | This time I went to Guǎngzhōu because I had a very good friend coming there from Hong Kong.              |
| 3. A: Wǒmen yǒu yìnián méi jiàn le.                                                        | We had not seen each other for a year.                                                                   |
| A: Tā qǐng wǒ péi ta yìqǐ qù lǚxíng.                                                       | She asked me to accompany her (in her) travels.                                                          |
| 4. A: Sānge yuè yǐqián wǒ zài Guǎngzhōu, nèige shíhou tā hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.   | Three months ago, when I was in Guǎngzhōu, she didn't know yet whether she would be able to come or not. |
| 5. B: Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?                                                       | What places did you go to?                                                                               |
| A: Nánjīng, Shànghǎi, Hángzhōu, Sūzhōu, dōu qù le. Hángzhōu zhēn shì piàoliang.            | We went to Nánjīng, Shànghǎi, Hángzhōu, and Sūzhōu. Hángzhōu is really beautiful.                        |
| 6. A: Yǒu jīhui wǒ yào zài qù yíci.                                                        | If I have the chance, I would like to go again.                                                          |
| 7. A: Zhèixiē dìfang nǐ dōu qùguo le ba?                                                   | You have gone to all those places, I suppose?                                                            |
| B: Méi dōu qùguo. Wǒ hái méi qùguo Sūzhōu.                                                 | I haven't been to all of them. I still haven't been to Sūzhōu.                                           |

- |            |                                   |
|------------|-----------------------------------|
| 8. huí guó | to return to one's native country |
| 9. huí jiā | to come/go home                   |
| 10. huíqu  | to go back                        |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                   |                             |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| 11. rènao         | to be lively/bustling/noisy |
| 12. yǒu yìsi      | to be interesting           |
| 13. méi(yǒu) yìsi | to be uninteresting         |
| 14. suǒyǐ (suǒyì) | therefore, so               |

## VOCABULARY

chū mén (chū ménr)	to go out, to go away from home, to go out of town
gāng	only a short while ago, just
Hángzhōu	(a city in Zhèjiāng Province in the PRC, formerly spelled Hangchow)
hǎo jiǔ	a long time
huí	to return to, to go back to
huí guó	to return to one's native country
huí jiā	to return home
huílai	to come back
huíqu	to go back
jiàn	to meet, to see
jīhui	opportunity, chance
méi(yǒu) yìsi	to be uninteresting
néng	can; to be able to
péi	to accompany
piàoliang	to be beautiful
qǐng	to request, to invite
rènao	to be lively/bustling/noisy
suǒyǐ (suǒyi)	therefore, so
Sūzhōu	(a city in Jiāngsū Province in the PRC, formerly spelled Soochow)
wèishénme	why
yīnwei	because
yìqǐ	together, along with
yòu	again (with completed actions)
yǒu yìsi	to be interesting
zài	again (with uncompleted actions)

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

huār kāile	the flowers have bloomed (literally, "opened")
jiānglái	in the future
shōudao	to receive
yǒumíngde dìfang	famous place
zuìjìn	recently



Běijīng Workers' Stadium



## REFERENCE NOTES

1. B: Hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn, nǐn chū  
mén le ba? I haven't seen you for a long time.  
You have been away, I suppose?  
A: Shì a, wǒ yòu dào Guǎngzhōu  
qu le. Yes, I went to Guǎngzhōu again.

Notes on No. 1

Hǎo jiǔ, "very long": In this phrase, the word hǎo means "very." Some additional examples of this use of hǎo are

hǎo dà	very large
hǎo duō rén	a good many people
hǎo jitiān	quite a few days

Persons from Taiwan frequently use hǎo, "very," before another hǎo, as in Hǎo hǎowán! "What fun!" and Hǎo hǎochī! "Delicious!" Speakers from Běijīng think that this repetition of hǎo sounds bad.

The verb jiàn means "to see someone" in the sense of "to visit/talk with someone." The verb kànjian is used for "to see" in the sense of "to perceive an object."

Chū mén means "to go out," "to go away from home," "to go out of town"; literally, "to go out the door."

Yòu is the word for "again" which is used with completed actions. (See notes on No. 6 for "again" with actions that have not been completed.)

Òu, nǐ yòu lái le!	Oh, you have come again!
Qìshuǐ yòu méiyǒu le.	We are out of soda again.
Tā zuótiān méi shàng kè.	Yesterday he didn't attend class.
Jīntiān yòu méi shàng kè.	Today, again, he didn't attend class.

2. B: Nín wèishénme gāng huílai, yòu qù le ne? Why did you go again when you had just come back from there?  
 A: Wǒ zhèicì dào Guǎngzhōu qù shì yīnwei wǒ yǒu yige hěn hǎode péngyou cóng Xiānggǎng lái. This time I went to Guǎngzhōu because I had a very good friend coming there from Hong Kong.

Notes on No. 2

Wèishénme, "why," follows the subject in the first sentence of exchange 2. This question word usually occurs in that position. (In English, "why" always precedes the subject.)

Nǐ	wèishénme	yòu qù le ne?
	(Why	did you go again?)

Sometimes wèishénme precedes the subject of a sentence:

Wèishénme	tā	méi qù?
Tā	wèishénme	méi qù?

"Why didn't he go?"

Gāng, "only a short while ago," "just": The first sentence in the exchange could also be translated as "Why, having just come back from there, did you go again?"

The adverb gāng is used in sentences describing something that has just been done, in other words, completed action. But notice that the marker le for completion is not used here. The marker le is added when the focus is on whether or not the action has been performed, not on when or how it was performed. Gāng is often used in sentences emphasizing the recentness of an action, not the fact that it was done; therefore le is not used.

- Nǐ shì shénme shíhou lái de? When did you come here?  
 Gāng lái. I just got here.  
 Nǐ mèimei zài bu zài? Is your little sister here?  
 Tā gāng zǒu. She just left.

Huí, "to return," "to go back": Like chū, "to go out," and jìn, "to enter," huí must be followed by either a place word or a directional ending.

- |             |                                   |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| huí Běijīng | to return to Běijīng              |
| huíguó      | to return to one's native country |
| huíjiā      | to return home                    |
| huílai      | to come back                      |
| huíqu       | to go back                        |

The meaning of huílai is not as broad as that of the English translation "to come back," which has two meanings: 1) to come from someplace else to the original place ("He leaves for work at eight and doesn't come back till six.") and 2) to come another time ("Mr. Wáng isn't in today; come back tomorrow.") Huílai means "to return to a particular place." To say "to come another time" in Chinese, you would use an adverb meaning "again" and the verb lái. For example,

Wáng Xiānsheng jīntiān bú  
zài, qǐng ni míngtiān zài  
lái.

Mr. Wáng isn't in today; please  
come back tomorrow.

Nèige rén zuótiān yòu lái  
zhǎo ni, nǐ bú zài.

That guy came back looking for you  
yesterday, but you were out.

Ne: Because of the question word wèishénme, "why," the first sentence in exchange 2 is clearly a question. The marker ne is not needed to indicate a question, but does give an added ring of inquisitiveness to the sentence. Questions ending in ne often seem to be asking for definite answers.

Yīnwei, "because": Here are some simpler sentences containing yīnwei:

Nǐ wèishénme méi lái?  
Yīnwei wǒ hěn máng.

Why didn't you come?  
Because I was very busy.

Nǐ wèishénme lái wǎn le?  
Yīnwei wǒ zòucūo le.

Why did you come late?  
Because I made a wrong turn.

Nǐ wèishénme yòu qù le?  
Yīnwei wǒde péngyou cóng  
Xiānggǎng lái.

Why did you go again?  
Because my friend was coming from  
Hong Kong.

The word order in the second sentence of exchange 2 may be described in terms of a pattern:

S E N T E N C E

shi yīnwei

S E N T E N C E

Wǒ zhèicì dào  
Guǎngzhōu qù

wǒ yǒu yige hěn  
hǎode péngyou  
cóng Xiānggǎng  
lái.

The phrase hěn hǎode péngyou contains the marker of modification -de. The modifying phrase ADVERB + ADJECTIVAL VERB (e.g., zuì xiǎo, tài gāo) is followed by -de. Therefore hǎo péngyou does not need -de, but hěn hǎode péngyou does.

The verb yǒu is translated in the past tense in the second sentence of this exchange: "I HAD a . . . friend coming." Notice that there is no completed-action marker in the sentence. Yǒu cannot be used with a completed-action marker because it is a STATE verb, not an action verb. (See notes on Nos. 7-8 in BIO, Unit 8, and on No. 4 in this unit.)

3. A: Wǒmen yǒu yìnián méi jiàn le. We had not seen each other for a year.  
 A: Tā qǐng wǒ péi ta yìqǐ qù lǚxíng. She asked me to accompany her (in her) travels.

Notes on No. 3

Yǒu yìnián méi: To state the period of time within which something has not happened, place the amount of time in front of the negative and the verb. The verb yǒu may be placed in front of the amount of time.

Wǒmen	(yǒu)	sānnián	méi jiàn le.
(as for us	there have been	3 years	haven't met)

"We haven't seen each other for three years."

In this example, new-situation le might be translated as "as of now."

When you are talking about a period of time within which something will not happen, the same pattern is used, but yǒu may NOT be added:

Wǒ	liǎngtiān	bù chīfàn.	"I'm not going to eat for two days."
----	-----------	------------	--------------------------------------

The verb qǐng, which you have already learned as "please," means "to request [that a person do something]" or "to invite." Normally, when you qǐng someone to take a trip or to go out, you are saying that you will pay all expenses.

4. A: Sānge yuè yǐqián wǒ zài Guǎngzhōu, nèige shíhou tā hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái. Three months ago, when I was in Guǎngzhōu, she didn't know yet whether she would be able to come or not.

Notes on No. 4

Yǐqián, "ago": You have already seen yǐqián used after a phrase to mean "before."

Wǒ shàng bān yǐqián, wǒ mǎi diǎnr chīde. Before I start work, I will buy something to eat.

In No. 4, yǐqián is used after an amount of time to mean "ago."

Liǎngnián yǐqián, wǒ méiyǒu qìchē. Two years ago, I didn't have a car.

Néng, "can," "to be able to," "to be capable of": The most general word in Chinese for "to be able to" is néng. The meanings of néng and kéyi, "to be permitted by someone" or "permissible according to some rules or conventions," overlap.

Nèige shíhou tā hái bù zhīdào: The negative is bù, even though the sentence refers to the past. The negative méi cannot be used here because it is the negative of completed action. The verb zhīdào, like the verb yǒu and adjectival verbs such as hǎo, is a state verb and cannot be thought of as completed.

Since the negative of a state verb is the same in the present and past tenses, the intended time must be discovered from the context. One reason for using nèige shíhou in No. 4 is to make the time reference very clear.

STATE VERBS include all adjectival verbs, auxiliary verbs, and a few other verbs. Here are some examples:

<u>STATE VERBS</u>		
<u>Adjectival Verbs</u>	<u>Auxiliaries</u>	<u>Others</u>
dà	huì	shì
xiǎo	kéyi	zài
guì	néng	yǒu
piányi	děi	xìng
kuài	bú bì	jiào
màn	yào	zhīdào
duō	xiǎng	xǐhuan
shǎo		
gāoxìng		

Yījiūsānyīnián dōngxī dōu bú guì. In 1931, everything was inexpensive.

Wǒ zài Déguóde shíhou bú huì shuō Déguó huà. When I was in Germany, I couldn't speak German.

Wǒ yǐqián bù xǐhuan niàn shū. Before, I didn't like to study.

Bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái, "didn't know if she would be able to come": The object of the verb zhīdào is a choice-type question, néng bu néng lái. Here are more examples of this usage:

Wǒ bù zhīdào hái yǒu méiyǒu. I don't know if there are any left.

Nǐ wènwen tā mǎile méiyǒu. Ask him if he bought it.

Wǒ xiǎng zhīdào tāmen lái bu lái. I would like to know if they are coming or not.

English-speaking students of Chinese are often tempted to translate "if" as rúguǒ or yàoshi; to do so, however, is wrong. The following rule may help you remember to use a choice-type question: Whenever the "if" in an English sentence means "whether," use a choice-type question in Chinese. For example, "I would like to know if they are coming" means "I would like to know whether they are coming"; therefore, in Chinese, you would use a choice-type question as the object of the verb zhīdao.

5. B: Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?      What places did you go to?  
 A: Nánjīng, Shànghǎi, Hángzhōu, Sūzhōu, dōu qù le. Hángzhōu zhēn shi piàoliang.      We went to Nánjīng, Shànghǎi, Hángzhōu, and Sūzhōu. Hángzhōu is really beautiful.

Notes on No. 5

Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang? is ambiguous. It could mean either "What places did all of you go to?" or "What are all the places that you went to?"

You already know that dōu may refer to an object when that object precedes the verb, in topic position. (See the second sentence in exchange 5.)

In this first sentence of the exchange, dōu is referring to an object which occurs after the verb. When an object includes a question word, it is not placed before dōu in the sentence.

- Tā dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?      What are all the places that he went to?  
 Tā dōu niànguo shénme shū?      What are all the books that she has read?  
 Tā dōu mǎiguo shénme dōngxi?      What are all the things that he bought?

The shi in Hángzhōu zhēn shi piàoliang has been added for emphasis. Shi is not required before adjectival verbs.

6. A: Yǒu jīhuì wǒ yào zài qù yíci. If I have the chance, I would like to go again.

Notes on No. 6

The adverb zài means "again" in talking about actions that have not been completed. (This adverb was translated previously in your text as "then" in commands.)

Míngtiān zài lái ba! Come again tomorrow.

Qǐng ni zài shuō yíci. Please say it again.

Yíci means "one occurrence of going," or "one trip," in this sentence. (The English translation does not include an equivalent of yíci.)

7. A: Zhèixiē dìfang nǐ dōu qùguo le ba? You have gone to all those places, I suppose?  
B: Méi dōu qùguo. Wǒ hái méi qùguo Sūzhōu. I haven't been to all of them. I still haven't been to Sūzhōu.

Note on No. 7

Méi dōu, "not all": In the second sentence of exchange 7, the negative méi precedes the adverb dōu. Placing a negative before dōu instead of after it changes the meaning of the phrase. Compare the sentences below:

Tāmen dōu bù lái. They are all not coming. (All of them are not coming.)

Tāmen bù dōu lái. Not all of them are coming.

Wǒ dōu méi qùguo. I haven't been to any of them.

Wǒ méi dōu qùguo. I haven't been to all of them.

8. huí guó	to return to one's native country
9. huí jiā	to come/go home
10. huíqu	to go back
11. rènao	to be lively/bustling/noisy
12. yǒu yìsi	to be interesting
13. méi(yǒu) yìsi	to be uninteresting
14. suǒyǐ (suóyǐ)	therefore, so

Note on Additional Required Vocabulary

Suǒyǐ (also pronounced suóyǐ) is the word "therefore," "so."

Wǒ hěn máng, suóyǐ méi qù. I was very busy, so I didn't go.

In Chinese sentences expressing cause and result, the pattern yīnwei... suóyǐ... is preferred. English speakers often find difficulty in using this pattern because it sounds unnatural in English to say "Because I was very busy, so I didn't go." In English, either "because" or "so" would be omitted; but, in Chinese, both yīnwei and suóyǐ are often retained.

Yīnwei wǒ hěn máng, suóyǐ méi qù. I was very busy, so I didn't go. (OR "Because I was very busy, I didn't go.")

Yīnwei tā shì hǎo xuésheng, suóyǐ lǎoshī dōu xǐhuan tā. Because he is a good student, all the teachers like him.

Yīnwei wǒ méiyǒu hùzhào, suóyǐ xiànzài wǒ hái bù néng líkāi. I don't have a passport, so I can't leave yet. (OR "Because I don't have a passport, I can't leave yet.")

Yīnwei wǒ yào dào Zhōngguó qù, suóyǐ wǒ yào xué Zhōngwén. I have to learn Chinese because I'm going to go to China.

Yīnwei wǒ méiyǒu chē, suóyǐ wǒ bù néng zhùde lí xuéxiào tài yuǎn. I don't have a car, so I can't live too far away from school. (OR "Because I don't have a car, I can't live too far away from school.")

Notice that suóyǐ always precedes the subject of the sentence.

Suóyǐ may also mean "that's why...": "That's why you came here by plane," Suóyǐ ni shì zuò fēijī lái de. When used this way, the word suóyǐ is stressed.



DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Tā chū mén le.  
(He has gone out.)
2. Tā dào Zhōngguo qù le.
3. Tā niàn shū le.
4. Tā shàngqu le.
5. Tā dào péngyou jiā qù le.
6. Tā lái le.
7. Tā huíqu le.

- You: Tā yòu chū mén le ma?  
(Has he gone out again?)
- Tā yòu dào Zhōngguo qù le ma?
- Tā yòu niàn shū le ma?
- Tā yòu shàngqu le ma?
- Tā yòu dào péngyou jiā qù le ma?
- Tā yòu lái le ma?
- Tā yòu huíqu le ma?

B. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Wǒ yào kàn yíge péngyou.  
(I want to see a friend.)
2. Wǒ yào mǎi yìběn Zhōngguo zìdiǎn.
3. Tā xiǎng mǎi yíge huāpíng.
4. Tā yào kànkan mǔqin.
5. Tā dāsuan qù huàn yìdiǎn qián.
6. Tā xiǎng xué Zhōngwén.
7. Tā dāsuan mǎi yìdiǎn dōngxì.

- You: Wǒ zhèicì qù shì yào kàn yíge péngyou.  
(The reason I'm going this time is [that] I want to see a friend.)
- Wǒ zhèicì qù shì yào mǎi yìběn Zhōngguo zìdiǎn.
- Tā zhèicì qù shì xiǎng mǎi yíge huāpíng.
- Tā zhèicì qù shì yào kànkan mǔqin.
- Tā zhèicì qù shì dāsuan qù huàn yìdiǎn qián.
- Tā zhèicì qù shì xiǎng xué Zhōngwén.
- Tā zhèicì qù shì dāsuan mǎi yìdiǎn dōngxì.

C. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                                 |                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi qù le.<br/>(<u>cue</u>) kànjian ta<br/>(I haven't gone for a year.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kànjian ta le.<br/>(I haven't seen him for a year.)</p> |
| <p>2. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kànjian ta le.<br/>dào Shànghǎi qù</p>                                                  | <p>Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi dào Shànghǎi qù le.</p>                                             |
| <p>3. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi dào Shànghǎi qù le. kàn Zhōngwén bào</p>                                                | <p>Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kàn Zhōngwén bào le.</p>                                            |
| <p>4. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi kàn Zhōngwén bào le. qù kàn ta</p>                                                      | <p>Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi qù kàn ta le.</p>                                                   |
| <p>5. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi qù kàn ta le. zuò fēijī</p>                                                             | <p>Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi zuò fēijī le.</p>                                                   |
| <p>6. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi zuò fēijī le. dào zhèr lái</p>                                                          | <p>Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi dào zhèr lái le.</p>                                                |
| <p>7. Wǒ yǒu yìnián méi dào zhèr lái le.</p>                                                                    |                                                                                          |

D. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wǒ gēge qǐng wǒ péi ta qù lǚxíng.<br/>(My older brother asked me to accompany him [in his] travels.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Wǒ děi péi wǒ gēge qù lǚxíng.<br/>(I must accompany my older brother [in his] travels.)</p> |
| <p>2. Wǒ jiějie qǐng wǒ péi ta qù mǎi dōngxì.</p>                                                                              | <p>Wǒ děi péi wǒ jiějie qù mǎi dōngxì.</p>                                                                 |
| <p>3. Wǒ àiren qǐng wǒ péi ta qù kàn péngyou.</p>                                                                              | <p>Wǒ děi péi wǒ àiren qù kàn péngyou.</p>                                                                 |
| <p>4. Zhāng Tóngzhì qǐng wǒ péi ta dào Běijīng qù.</p>                                                                         | <p>Wǒ děi péi Zhāng Tóngzhì dào Běijīng qù.</p>                                                            |
| <p>5. Lǐ Tóngzhì qǐng wǒ péi ta dào bówùguǎn qù.</p>                                                                           | <p>Wǒ děi péi Lǐ Tóngzhì dào bówùguǎn qù.</p>                                                              |

6. Tā qǐng wǒ péi tā qù mǎi shū.

Wǒ děi péi tā qù mǎi shū.

7. Tā qǐng wǒ péi tā qù huàn qián.

Wǒ děi péi tā qù huàn qián.

E. Substitution Drill

1. Speaker: Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.  
lái.  
(cue) shénme shíhou  
(At that time he did not yet know whether or not he would be able to come.)

You: Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào shénme shíhou lái.  
(At that time he did not yet know what time to come.)

2. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào shénme shíhou lái.  
xīngqījǐ

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào xīngqījǐ lái.

3. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào xīngqījǐ lái. keyi bu keyi

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào keyi bu keyi lái.

4. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào keyi bu keyi lái. jǐyuè

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào jǐyuè lái.

5. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào jǐyuè lái. néng bu néng

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái.

6. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào néng bu néng lái. jǐhào

Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào jǐhào lái.

7. Tā nèige shíhou hái bù zhīdào jǐhào lái.

F. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?<br/>(cue) Shànghǎi,<br/>Nánjīng<br/>(What places did you go to?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Shànghǎi, Nánjīng wǒmen dōu qù le.<br/>(We went to both Shànghǎi and Nánjīng.)</p> |
| <p>2. Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?<br/>nǐ shuōde</p>                                                                    | <p>Nǐ shuōde nèixiē dìfang wǒmen dōu qù le.</p>                                                   |
| <p>3. Nǐmen dōu niànguo shénme?<br/>zhèngzhixué, jīngjixué</p>                                                            | <p>Zhèngzhixué, jīngjixué wǒmen dōu niàn le.</p>                                                  |
| <p>4. Nǐmen dōu mǎi shénme le?<br/>zhuōzi, pánziwǎn</p>                                                                   | <p>Zhuōzi, pánziwǎn wǒmen dōu mǎi le.</p>                                                         |
| <p>5. Nǐmen zuótiān dōu mǎi shénme le?<br/>shū, zázhi</p>                                                                 | <p>Shū, zázhi wǒmen dōu mǎi le.</p>                                                               |
| <p>6. Nǐmen dōu yào shénme yánsède?<br/>lándè, hóngde</p>                                                                 | <p>Lándè, hóngde wǒmen dōu yào.</p>                                                               |
| <p>7. Nǐmen jīntiān dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?<br/>bówùguǎn, zhǎnlǎnguǎn</p>                                                | <p>Bówùguǎn, zhǎnlǎnguǎn wǒmen dōu qù le.</p>                                                     |

G. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                           |                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Tāmen dōu lái le ma?<br/>(cue) not all<br/>(Did they all come?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Tāmen méi dōu lái.<br/>(Not all of them came.)</p> |
| <p>2. Tāmen dōu qù le ma? none</p>                                                        | <p>Tāmen dōu méi qù.</p>                                          |
| <p>3. Tāmen dōu zǒu le ma? not all</p>                                                    | <p>Tāmen méi dōu zǒu.</p>                                         |
| <p>4. Tāmen dōu mǎi le ma? none</p>                                                       | <p>Tāmen dōu méi mǎi.</p>                                         |
| <p>5. Tāmen dōu mài Zhōngguo shū ma?<br/>not all</p>                                      | <p>Tāmen bù dōu mài Zhōngguo shū.</p>                             |
| <p>6. Shànghǎi, Běijīng, Nánjīng tāmen dōu qùguo le ma?<br/>not all</p>                   | <p>Tāmen méi dōu qùguo.</p>                                       |
| <p>7. Tāmen dōu lái guo ma? none</p>                                                      | <p>Tāmen dōu méi lái guo.</p>                                     |

H. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Wǒ míngtiān yào zài qù yíci.  
(Tomorrow I want to go again.)
2. Tā hòutiān yào zài lái yíci.
3. Tā míngnián yào zài niàn yíci.
4. Wǒ xiàge yuè yào zài kàn yíci.
5. Tā xiàge xīngqī yào zài zuò yíci.
6. Wǒ xiàwǔ yào zài xué yíci.
7. Tā xiàge Xīngqīyī yào zài kāi yíci.

You: Wǒ zuótiān yòu qùle yíci.  
(Yesterday I went again.)

- Tā qiántiān yòu lái yíci.  
Tā qùnián yòu niànle yíci.  
Wǒ shàngge yuè yòu kànle yíci.  
Tā shàngge xīngqī yòu zuòle yíci.  
Wǒ shàngwǔ yòu xuéle yíci.  
Tā shàngge Xīngqīyī yòu kāile yíci.

I. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Nǐmen dōu qùguo shénme dìfang?  
(cue) zhèige dìfang  
(What places did you go to?)
2. Nǐmen dōu mǎi shénme le?  
shū
3. Nǐmen dōu yào shénme?  
mǎi lánde
4. Nǐmen dōu zhùguo shénme fāndiàn?  
nèige fāndiàn
5. Nǐmen dōu niànguo shénme?  
zhèngzhixué
6. Nǐmen dōu kàn shénme diànyǐng le?  
zhèige diànyǐng
7. Nǐmen dōu xìng shénme? Lǐ

You: Nǐmen dōu qùguo zhèige dìfang ma?  
(Did all of you go to this place?)

- Nǐmen dōu mǎi shū le ma?  
Nǐmen dōu yào mǎi lánde ma?  
Nǐmen dōu zhùguo nèige fāndiàn ma?  
Nǐmen dōu niànguo zhèngzhixué ma?  
Nǐmen dōu kàn zhèige diànyǐng le ma?  
Nǐmen dōu xìng Lǐ ma?

J. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                         |        |                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā yòu qù le.<br>(cue) huílai<br>(He's gone again.) |        | <u>You</u> : Tā wèishénme gāng huílai yòu<br>qù le ne?<br>(Why did he go again when he<br>had just come back?) |
| 2. Tā yòu lái le.                                                       | huíqu  | Tā wèishénme gāng huíqu yòu lái<br>le ne?                                                                      |
| 3. Tā yòu zǒu le.                                                       | huílai | Tā wèishénme gāng huílai yòu zǒu<br>le ne?                                                                     |
| 4. Tā yòu huíqu le.                                                     | lái    | Tā wèishénme gāng lái yòu huíqu<br>le ne?                                                                      |
| 5. Tā yòu huílai le.                                                    | qù     | Tā wèishénme gāng qù yòu huílai le<br>ne?                                                                      |
| 6. Tā yòu huílai le.                                                    | zǒu    | Tā wèishénme gāng zǒu yòu huílai<br>le ne?                                                                     |
| 7. Tā yòu qù le.                                                        | huílai | Tā wèishénme gāng huílai yòu qù<br>le ne?                                                                      |

## MODULE 6: ARRANGING A MEETING

The Meeting Module (MTG) will provide you with the skills needed to arrange meetings or social gatherings, to greet people, to make introductions, and to accept or decline invitations in Chinese.

Before starting this module, you must take and pass the TRN Criterion Test.

The MTG Criterion Test will focus largely on this module, but material from ORN, BIO, MON, DIR, TRN, and associated resource modules is also included.

### OBJECTIVES

- Upon successful completion of this module, the student should be able to
1. Give the English equivalent for any Chinese sentence in the MTG Target Lists.
  2. Say any Chinese sentence in the MTG Target Lists when cued with its English equivalent.
  3. Make and respond to introductions with appropriate polite questions and answers.
  4. Make phone calls and leave messages.
  5. Arrange a meeting (time and place) with someone by talking with him or his secretary either in person or by phone.
  6. Request that the time of a meeting be changed.
  7. Invite a person to lunch, deciding on the time and the restaurant.
  8. Arrange a social gathering for a specific time of day, inviting guests to his home and encouraging them to accept the invitation.
  9. Greet guests upon their arrival at his home.
  10. Accept/decline a social/business invitation with the appropriate degree of politeness.

## UNIT 1 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Wèi, nǐ shì Zhū Kēzhǎng ma?<br/>Shì. Nín shì něiwèi?<br/>Wǒ shì Wēilián Mǎdīng.<br/>Òu, Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, hǎo jiǔ<br/>bú jiàn.</p>                                     | <p>Hello. Are you Section Chief Zhū?<br/>Yes. Who is this, please?<br/>I'm William Martin.<br/>Oh, Mr. Martin-- I haven't seen<br/>you for a long time.</p>                                                                            |
| <p>2. Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì xiǎng gēn<br/>nín dāngmiàn tántan.</p>                                                                                                                | <p>I have something I would like to<br/>talk with you about in person.</p>                                                                                                                                                             |
| <p>3. Nín yǒu gōngfu meiyou?</p>                                                                                                                                             | <p>Do you have any free time?</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <p>4. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?</p>                                                                                                                                       | <p>What time would suit you?</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <p>5. Sāndiǎn bǐ liǎngdiǎn fāngbian<br/>yìdiǎnr. Yīnwei wǒ yìhuǐr<br/>chūqu, yěxǔ liǎngdiǎn<br/>huíbulái.<br/>Nàme, wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng zài<br/>lóuxiàde huìkèshì děng nín.</p> | <p>Three would be more convenient than<br/>two. Since I'm going out in a<br/>little while, I might not be able<br/>to get back by two.<br/>Well then, I'll wait for you in the<br/>reception room downstairs at<br/>three o'clock.</p> |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                        |                                       |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <p>6. huídelái</p>     | <p>to be able to get back in time</p> |
| <p>7. kòng(r)</p>      | <p>free time, spare time</p>          |
| <p>8. lóushàng</p>     | <p>upstairs</p>                       |
| <p>9. shāngliang</p>   | <p>to discuss, to talk over</p>       |
| <p>10. yǒu kòng(r)</p> | <p>to have free time</p>              |



UNIT 2 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Wèi, Měidàsī.</p> <p>Wǒ shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎnde<br/>         Qiáozhì Dáféi. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn<br/>         shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Kēzhǎng<br/>         jiǎng-yíjiǎng.</p>                                                    | <p>Hello. Department of American and<br/>         Oceanic Affairs.</p> <p>I am George Duffy of the Canadian<br/>         Embassy. I have something I<br/>         would like to discuss with Section<br/>         Chief Wáng.</p> |
| <p>2. Wáng Kēzhǎng xiànzài zài kāi huì.<br/>         Dēng tā kāiwán huì wǒ gāosong<br/>         tā gěi nǐ huì diànhuà.</p>                                                                                                 | <p>Section Chief Wáng is at a meeting<br/>         now. When she is finished with the<br/>         meeting, I will tell her to return<br/>         your call.</p>                                                                 |
| <p>3. Hǎo, xièxie nǐ.<br/>         Bú xiè.</p>                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Fine. Thank you.<br/>         Don't mention it.</p>                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <p>4. Nǐ dǎ diànhuà láide shíhou wǒ<br/>         méi shíjiān gēn nǐ shuō huà.<br/>         Méi guānxi.</p>                                                                                                                 | <p>When you called here, I didn't have<br/>         time to speak with you.<br/>         It doesn't matter.</p>                                                                                                                   |
| <p>5. Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdi<br/>         shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn<br/>         tāntan.</p> <p>Nǐ míngtiān néng bu néng dào<br/>         wǒ zhèr lái?</p> <p>Kéyi. Míngtiān shénme shíhou<br/>         dōu kéyi.</p> | <p>The reason I called you is that I<br/>         would like to talk with you in<br/>         person.<br/>         Can you come over here tomorrow?<br/>         Yes. Any time tomorrow would be<br/>         fine.</p>           |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
 (not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                            |                                                                   |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>6. guānxi</p>           | <p>relation, relationship, connection</p>                         |
| <p>7. jiǎng huà</p>        | <p>to speak, to talk; a speech</p>                                |
| <p>8. lǐngshìguǎn</p>      | <p>consulate</p>                                                  |
| <p>9. shìqing (yíjiàn)</p> | <p>matter, business, affair</p>                                   |
| <p>10. sīzhǎng</p>         | <p>department chief</p>                                           |
| <p>11. yǒu guānxi</p>      | <p>to relate to, to have a bearing on,<br/>         to matter</p> |

## UNIT 3 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ xiǎng xiàge Xīngqīliù<br>qǐng nín dào wǒmen jiā<br>lái chī ge biānfàn.<br>Nín hébì zhème kèqi?                                      | I would like to invite you to come<br>to our house for a simple meal<br>on Saturday of next week.<br>Why is it necessary to be so polite?                                                               |
| 2. Wǒ yǒu yige Měiguó péngyou<br>zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo shū.<br>Hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen liǎngwèi<br>jièshao jièshao.<br>Nà tài hǎo le!         | I have an American friend who<br>teaches at Taiwan University. I<br>would very much like to introduce<br>the two of you.<br>That's wonderful!                                                           |
| 3. Wǒ hěn xīwang gēn nǐ péngyou<br>tántan.<br>Búguò, kǒngpà wǒde Yīngwén bù<br>xíng.<br>Búdàn shuōde bù hǎo, yǒu shíhou<br>yě tīngbudǒng. | I wish very much to talk with your<br>friend.<br>However, I'm afraid that my English<br>isn't good enough.<br>Not only don't I speak well, (but)<br>sometimes I can't understand what<br>I hear either. |
| 4. Nǐ shuōde gēn Měiguó rén<br>yíyàng hǎo.                                                                                                | You speak as well as an American.                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 5. Wǒ méi qǐng shénme rén; hěn<br>suíbiàn.<br>Nà jiù xiān xiè le.                                                                         | I haven't invited anyone special;<br>it's very informal.<br>Well then, I'll thank you in advance.                                                                                                       |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |              |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|
| 6. bù tóng   | to be different        |
| 7. chá       | tea                    |
| 8. chī fàn   | to eat, to have a meal |
| 9. dànshi    | but                    |
| 10. érqiě    | furthermore, moreover  |
| 11. fàn      | (cooked) rice          |
| 12. hē       | to drink               |
| 13. jiāo shū | to teach               |

## UNIT 4 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                    |                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Hé Jiàoshòu, huānyíng, huānyíng.<br>Qǐng jìn.<br>Zhè shì yìdiǎn xiǎo yìsi.      | Professor Hollins, welcome. Please come in.<br>Here is a small token of appreciation.     |
| 2. Wǒ zhīdao nín xǐhuan shānshuǐ huà.<br>Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huàle yìzhāng. | I know you like landscape paintings.<br>I asked a friend to paint one especially for you. |
| 3. Zhèiwèi shì Hé Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo shū.<br>Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.               | This is Professor Hollins, who teaches at Taiwan University.<br>Glad to meet you.         |
| 4. Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō bù shóuxide dìfang yào xiàng nín qǐngjiào.                   | There is still much I'm not familiar with that I need to ask your advice about.           |
| 5. Xīwang yǐhòu yǒu jīhui duō jiānmiàn.                                            | I hope that in the future we will have an opportunity to meet more.                       |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 6. fāngfǎ     | method, way, means               |
| 7. fázi       | method, way                      |
| 8. huà        | painting (Běijīng pronunciation) |
| 9. qǐng zuò   | please sit down                  |
| 10. shèhuìxué | sociology                        |
| 11. túshūguǎn | library                          |
| 12. zuò       | to sit                           |

## UNIT 5 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                       |                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wài.                                                               | Hello.                                                                                     |
| Wèi, shì Wàijiāobù ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sìzhǎng shuō huà.              | Hello. Is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs? I want to speak with Department Chief Lín. |
| Nín shì nǎr a?                                                        | Who is this?                                                                               |
| Wǒ shì Fǎguó Shāngwù Jīngjiguān.                                      | I am the French Commercial/Economics Officer.                                              |
| 2. Lín Sìzhǎng zhèihuǐr bú zài. Nín yào liú ge huàr ma?               | Department Chief Lín is not here at the moment. Would you like to leave a message?         |
| 3. Wǒ bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎr xiěxiàlái.                             | I'll write down your phone number.                                                         |
| 4. Duìbuqǐ, nǐ gāngcái gěi wǒ dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài.                  | I'm sorry. When you called me just now, I wasn't in.                                       |
| 5. Wǒ nèitiān gēn nín yuēhǎole jīntiān dào nín bàngōngshì qu tán-tán. | The other day I made an appointment with you to go to your office today for a talk.        |
| Yīnwei wǒ yǒu yíjiàn yàojǐnde shì, suǒyì bù néng jīntiān qù.          | Because I have an urgent business matter, I can't go today.                                |
| Gǎi dào míngtiān xíng bu xíng?                                        | Would it be all right to change it [the appointment] to tomorrow?                          |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                  |                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| 6. hái shì       | still                         |
| 7. wàiguo        | foreign, abroad               |
| 8. wàiguo rén    | foreigner (non-Chinese)       |
| 9. wūzi (yìjiān) | room                          |
| 10. yāo          | one (telephone pronunciation) |

UNIT 6 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. Wōmen dào Dōngmén Cāntīng qù<br/>chī zhōngfàn, hǎo bu hǎo?<br/>Dōngménde cài méiyou Dàhuáde<br/>cài nàme hǎo.</p>    | <p>Let's go to the East Gate Restaurant<br/>to eat lunch. Okay?<br/>The food at the East Gate isn't as<br/>good as the food at the Great<br/>China.</p>                |
| <p>2. Suǐrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí<br/>zhèli jìn.<br/>Hái yǒu yíge xīn kāide<br/>fānguānzi lí wōmen zhèli<br/>gèng jìn.</p> | <p>Even though it [East Gate] is not<br/>too good, it is close to us.<br/>There is also a newly opened<br/>restaurant that is even closer<br/>to us.</p>               |
| <p>3. Tāmen nàlide cài fēicháng hǎo.<br/>Jīntiān wǒ qǐng ni dào nàli<br/>qù chī.<br/>Nà bù hǎo yìsi!</p>                   | <p>The food there is extremely good.<br/>Today I am going to invite you to<br/>go there to eat.<br/>I can't let you do that!<br/>(That would be too embarrassing!)</p> |
| <p>4. Dàhuáde cài yòu hǎo yòu piányi.<br/>Yě yǒu hǎoxiē cài biéde dìfang<br/>chībuzháo.</p>                                | <p>The food at the Great China is both<br/>good and cheap.<br/>They also have a good many dishes<br/>that you can't find (at) other<br/>places.</p>                    |
| <p>5. Nǐ shuōde dìfang yíding hǎo.</p>                                                                                     | <p>Any place you suggest is sure to<br/>be good.</p>                                                                                                                   |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                     |                                                  |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <p>6. bù yíding</p> | <p>not necessarily; it's not definite</p>        |
| <p>7. kànfa</p>     | <p>opinion, view</p>                             |
| <p>8. wǎnfàn</p>    | <p>supper, dinner</p>                            |
| <p>9. xiǎngfa</p>   | <p>idea, opinion</p>                             |
| <p>10. yìxiē</p>    | <p>some, several, a few</p>                      |
| <p>11. zǎofàn</p>   | <p>breakfast</p>                                 |
| <p>12. zuòfa</p>    | <p>way of doing things, method,<br/>practice</p> |

## UNIT 7 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                   |                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn<br>nín dǎting dǎting.                              | I have something I would like to<br>ask you about.                                             |
| Tīngshuō nín nàbian xīn lái<br>yíwèi Fāng Xiānsheng; tāde<br>míngzi wǒ wàngji le. | I have heard that you recently had<br>a Mr. Fāng join you. I have<br>forgotten his given name. |
| 2. Bú cuò, Fāng Démíng shì shàngge<br>lǐbài pài dào wǒmen zhèli<br>láide.         | That's right. Fāng Démíng was sent<br>over here last week.                                     |
| Zěnme? Nǐ rènshi ta ma?                                                           | Why? Do you know him?                                                                          |
| 3. Wǒ shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède.                                                   | I graduated from the University of<br>California.                                              |
| 4. Nǐ néng bu néng mǎshàng dào wǒ<br>bàngōngshì lái?                              | Can you come to my office right<br>away?                                                       |
| Méi wèntí. Chàbuduō bàngē<br>zhōngtóu jiù dào.                                    | No problem. I'll be there in about<br>half an hour.                                            |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                |                                                                                                            |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. jìde        | to remember                                                                                                |
| 6. rènde       | to recognize, to know (alternate<br>word for <u>rènshi</u> )                                               |
| 7. rènshi zì   | to know how to read (literally, "to<br>recognize characters")                                              |
| 8. wàng        | to forget (alternate word for<br><u>wàngji</u> , especially in the sense of<br>forgetting to DO something) |
| 9. wánquán     | completely                                                                                                 |
| 10. xiǎngqilai | to think of, to remember                                                                                   |
| 11. zuǒyòu     | approximately                                                                                              |

UNIT 8 TARGET LIST

- |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Wài, zhèi shì Lǐbīnsī.<br><br>Wèi, wǒ shì Láidēng Dàshǐde mǐshū.                               | Hello. This is the Protocol Department.<br><br>Hello. I am Ambassador Leyden's secretary.                                        |
| 2. Dàshǐ jiēzhào nǐmende qǐngtiě le.<br><br>Hěn kěxī yīnwei tā yǒu shì, Báyue jiǔhào bù néng lái. | The ambassador received your invitation.<br><br>Unfortunately, because he has a previous engagement, he cannot come on August 9. |
| Qǐng ni zhuǎngào Qiáo Bùzhǎng.<br>Hěn bàoqiàn.                                                    | Please inform Minister Qiáo.<br>I'm very sorry.                                                                                  |
| 3. Hěn yíhàn, tā bù néng lái.<br><br>Wǒ tì ni zhuǎngào yíxià.                                     | We very much regret that he cannot come.<br>I will pass on the message for you.                                                  |
| 4. Xīwang yǐhòu zài zhǎo jīhuì jùjù ba.                                                           | I hope that later we will find another opportunity to get together.                                                              |
| 5. Zhēn bù qiǎo, méi bànfa qù.                                                                    | I really couldn't make that; I have no way of going.                                                                             |
| 6. Wǒmen yǒu jige tóngxué jìhua dào Chángchéng qù wánr.                                           | A few of us students are planning to go to the Great Wall for an outing.                                                         |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |             |                                                |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 7. dàjiā    | everybody, everyone                            |
| 8. jiēdào   | to receive (alternate form of <u>jiēzhào</u> ) |
| 9. tóngshì  | fellow worker, colleague                       |
| 10. yīnggāi | should, ought to, must                         |

## UNIT 1

### REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

- |                                                        |                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. B: Wéi.                                             | Hello.                                                                         |
| A: Wài, nǐ shì Zhū Kēzhǎng ma?                         | Hello. Are you Section Chief Zhū?                                              |
| B: Shì. Nín shì něiwèi?                                | Yes. Who is this, please?                                                      |
| A: Wǒ shì Wēilián Mǎdīng.                              | I'm William Martin.                                                            |
| * B: Òu, Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn. Nǐ hǎo a?  | Oh, Mr. Martin--I haven't seen you for quite a while. How are you?             |
| A: Hǎo. Nǐ hǎo a?                                      | Fine. How are you?                                                             |
| 2. A: Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì xiǎng gēn nín dāngmiàn tántan.  | I have something I would like to talk with you about in person.                |
| 3. A: Bù zhīdào nín yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.                 | I don't know whether you have the time or not.                                 |
| B: Yǒu gōngfu.                                         | I have the time.                                                               |
| 4. A: Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?                     | What time would suit you?                                                      |
| B: Jīntiān, míngtiān dōu kényi.                        | Either today or tomorrow would be fine.                                        |
| 5. A: Jīntiān xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn zhōng fāngbian ma?       | Would two o'clock today be convenient?                                         |
| B: Sāndiǎn bǐ liǎngdiǎn fāngbian yìdiǎnr.              | Three would be more convenient than two.                                       |
| 6. B: Yīnwei wǒ yìhuìr chūqu, yěxǔ liǎngdiǎn huíbulái. | Since I'm going out in a little while, I might not be able to get back by two. |
| A: Sāndiǎn zhōng yě hǎo.                               | Three is fine also.                                                            |

---

\* The remaining sentences in this exchange occur on the C-1 tape.



7. B: Nàme, wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng zài  
lóuxiàde huìkèshì děng  
nín.

A: Hǎo, sāndiǎn jiàn.

Well then, I'll wait for you in the  
reception room downstairs at  
three o'clock.

Fine. I'll see you at three.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                 |                                |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| 8. huídelái     | to be able to get back in time |
| 9. kòng(r)      | free time, spare time          |
| 10. lóushàng    | upstairs                       |
| 11. shāngliang  | to discuss, to talk over       |
| 12. yǒu kòng(r) | to have free time              |

VOCABULARY

bǐ	compared with, than
dāngmiàn duì	in person, face to face to, towards; with regard to, with respect to
gōngfu	free time, spare time
héshì	to be suitable, to be appropriate, to fit
huíbulái huídelái huìkèshì (huìkèshǐ)	to be unable to get back to be able to get back in time reception room
kēzhǎng kòng(r)	section chief free time, spare time
lóushàng lóuxià	upstairs downstairs
nàme	well, then, in that case
shāngliang	to discuss, to talk over
tán	to chat, to talk about
wéi	hello (telephone greeting)
yěxǔ yìhuǐr yǒu gōngfu yǒu kòng(r)	perhaps, maybe a moment to have free time to have free time

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

chūkǒu gōngsī	export company
huì kè	to receive guests
xiē	several, some
yǒu yòng	to be useful

REFERENCE NOTES

- |                                                        |                                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. B: Wéi.                                             | Hello.                                                                |
| A: Wài, nǐ shì Zhū Kēzhǎng ma?                         | Hello. Are you Section Chief Zhū?                                     |
| B: Shì. Nín shì něiwèi?                                | Yes. Who is this, please?                                             |
| A: Wǒ shì Wēilián Mǎdīng.                              | I'm William Martin.                                                   |
| B: Òu, Mǎdīng Xiānsheng, hǎo<br>jiǔ bú jiàn. Nǐ hǎo a? | Oh, Mr. Martin--I haven't seen you<br>for quite a while. How are you? |
| A: Hǎo. Nǐ hǎo a?                                      | Fine. How are you?                                                    |

Notes on No. 1

Wéi is a greeting used in telephone conversations for "hello." Some speakers pronounce this greeting as wài. Unlike most Chinese words, wèi has no fixed tone. The intonation varies according to the speaker's mood.

Kēzhǎng: kē means "section," and zhǎng means "head of an organization." Here are some examples of how -zhǎng, "chief," "head," is used:

kē	section
kēzhǎng	section chief
chù	division
chùzhǎng	division chief
xuéxiào	school
xiàozhǎng	principal, headmaster

Nín shì něiwèi? Note the use of the polite terms nín and něiwèi. In the English translation, politeness is expressed by the use of the more indirect "Who is this" instead of "Who are you" and also by "please."

Hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn, "I haven't seen you for quite a while," is interchangeable with hǎo jiǔ méi jiàn.

- |                                                          |                                                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. A: Wǒ yǒu diǎnr shì xiǎng gēn<br>nín dāngmiàn tántan. | I have something I would like to<br>talk with you about in person. |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|

Notes on No. 2

Gēn: In No. 2 the word gēn is a prepositional verb translated as "with." The preposition gēn, "with," differs from the conjunction gēn, "and," in two important ways: a) where stress may be placed b) where the negative may be placed.



Gōngfu, however, is used only for amounts of time which a person has available for his own use.

Nǐ yǒu méiyǒu gōngfu gēn     Are you free to talk with me?  
wǒ tántan?

4. A: Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?     What time would suit you?  
B: Jīntiān, míngtiān dōu kěyǐ.     Either today or tomorrow would be fine.

Notes on No. 4

Duì, "to," "towards," "with regard to," "with respect to," is a prepositional verb which originally meant "facing." In modern Chinese, its object introduces either the target of the action or the thing concerned. Contrast this with gěi, "for": the object introduced by gěi receives the benefit of the action. These generalizations may help you sort out some of the differences between duì and gěi. You might find it helpful to memorize some examples, as well.

duì INTRODUCING THE TARGET OF THE ACTION ("to")

Nǐde huà shì duì shéi shuōde?     To whom were you speaking?  
Tā duì wǒ hěn kèqǐ.     He is very polite to me.  
Nǐ duì wǒ tài hǎo.     You are too good to me.

duì INTRODUCING THE THING CONCERNED ("with regard to," "with respect to")

Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?     What time suits you?  
Shénme shíhou duì nín fāngbian?     What time is convenient for you?

Notice that the English is "for you" in the last example, but in Chinese you must say "What time is convenient with regard to you?"

gěi INTRODUCING THE BENEFICIARY

Wǒ gěi tā xiěle xìn le.     I wrote him a letter.  
Zhè shì yìzhāng shíkuàide,     Here's a ten-dollar bill. Please  
qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ huàn huan.     change it for me.  
Qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ xiě nǐde dìzhǐ.     Would you write down your address  
for me, please?

Héshì is an adjectival verb meaning "to fit," "to suit," "to be suitable/appropriate." When trying on clothes in a store, you might say Zhèige bù héshì, "This doesn't fit." In another situation, héshì could be translated very freely as "best": Něitiān duì nín héshì? "What day would be best for you?"

5. A: Jīntiān xiàwǔ liǎngdiǎn                      Would two o'clock today be convenient?  
               zhōng fāngbian ma?  
       B: Sāndiǎn bǐ liǎngdiǎn fāng-                      Three would be more convenient than  
               bian yìdiǎnr.                                              two.

Note on No. 5

Sāndiǎn bǐ liǎngdiǎn fāngbian yìdiǎnr: Bǐ is a prepositional verb used to make comparisons between two things which are different.\* In translating, you may find it helpful to think of bǐ as the English "compared with" or "than."\*\* Notice that the bǐ phrase precedes the adjectival verb or another predicate in a sentence.

Sāndiǎn	bǐ	liǎngdiǎn	fāngbian yìdiǎnr.
(3 o'clock	than compared with	2 o'clock	more convenient)

"Three is more convenient than two."

Tā	bǐ	wo	yǒu	gōngfu.
(he	than compared with	I	have	free time)

"He has more free time than I do."

The two elements being compared may be nouns, pronouns, verb phrases, or even full sentences. Actually, all elements joined by bǐ act as nouns, as seen in the English translations of the examples below.

Zuò fēijī	bǐ	zuò huǒchē	kuài.
(ride plane	than compared with	ride train	fast)

"Going by plane is faster than going by train."

\*A different pattern is used to say that two things are the same. (See MTG, Unit 3, notes on Nos. 4-5.)

\*\*To say "A is not as . . . as B," you use a different construction, which you will learn in MTG, Unit 6, notes on No. 2.

Nǐ lái	bǐ	wǒ qù	fāngbian.
(you come	than compared with	I go	convenient)

"It's more convenient for you to come than for me to go."

6. B: Yīnwei wǒ yìhuǐr chūqu, yěxǔ liǎngdiǎn huíbulái. Since I'm going out in a little while, I might not (be able to) get back by two.
- A: Sāndiǎn zhōng yě hǎo. Three is fine also.

Notes on No. 6

Yìhuǐr, "a little while": When r is added to a syllable ending in i, the pronunciation changes to /er/. Yìhuǐr is actually pronounced yìhuǐr.

Sentence placement of time phrases: Wǒ yìhuǐr chūqu is translated as "I'm going out IN a little while." Contrast this with wǒ chūqu yìhuǐr, "I'm going out FOR a little while." Let's review the placement of different kinds of time expressions in a Chinese sentence.

If you want to say when something happens ("yesterday") or in how long something happens ("in two years"), you are using time phrases which in Chinese are considered to be POINTS IN TIME. Not only is a time phrase such as "two o'clock" a point in time, but a phrase such as "five days" can also be a point in time if the focus is on the end of this period of time. In English, this focus is expressed by "in five days," "by the end of five days," or "at the end of five days." In Chinese, you do not need to use words such as "in," "at," or "by" because the position of the time phrase in the sentence indicates the meaning. Time phrases which are considered points in time are placed BEFORE THE VERB.

WHEN (a point in time)

- |                                   |                                              |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Wǒ <u>zuótiān</u> kànjian ta le.  | I saw him <u>yesterday</u> .                 |
| Wǒ <u>cóngqián</u> lái guo zhèlǐ. | I have been here <u>before</u> .             |
| Wǒ <u>liǎngdiǎn</u> zhōng huílai. | I'll be back <u>at two o'clock</u> .         |
| Wǒ <u>yìdiǎn</u> zhōng huíbulái.  | I can't make it back <u>by one o'clock</u> . |

AT THE END OF/BY THE END OF (a period of time which is treated as a point in time because the focus is on the end point)

- |                                  |                                                            |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wǒ <u>sāntiān</u> jiu zuòwán le. | I finished doing it <u>in (by the end of) three days</u> . |
| Wǒ <u>wǔfēn</u> zhōng jiu zǒu.   | I'm leaving <u>in (at the end of) five minutes</u> .       |

Nǐ <u>jǐtiān</u> huílai?	In (at the end of) how many days will you come back?
Nǐ <u>duōjiǔ</u> kéyi xiěwán?	How long will it be before you can finish writing it? ( <u>by the end of how long</u> )

On the other hand, phrases which express CONTINUATION OF TIME have a different place in sentences. To express an amount of time which passes, put the time expression AFTER THE VERB.

DURATION (the length of time something continues)

Wǒ xiǎng gēn tā tán <u>yìhuǐr</u> .	I would like to talk with him <u>for awhile</u> .
Tā zài Xiānggǎng zhùle <u>yíge xīngqī</u> .	She stayed in Hong Kong <u>for one week</u> .

TIME SINCE (the length of time which has passed since something happened)

Tā sǐle <u>sānnián</u> le.	He died <u>three years ago</u> .
Wǒ zuòwánle <u>yíge zhōngtóu</u> le.	<u>It has been an hour since</u> I finished.

Because yìhuǐr follows the verb in wǒ chūqu yìhuǐr, it indicates the length of time which will pass after I go out (chūqu). Yìhuǐr precedes the verb in wǒ yìhuǐr chūqu, indicating when I will go out ("in a little while").

Yěxǔ literally means "perhaps." The word is often used where "may" or "might" would be appropriate in English.

Yěxǔ liǎngdiǎn huíbulái, "I might not (be able to) get back by two": Notice that this expression liǎngdiǎn, in time-when position, before the verb, means "by" a certain time. Other time phrases in this position may also mean "by" a certain time.

Huíbulái is another form of huílái, "to come back." Compound verbs of result may be split by the negative bu or the syllable de. Huílái may become either huídelái, "can come back," or huíbulái, "can't come back." These two forms are called the potential forms of the verb; that is, the meaning "can/be able to" or "cannot/unable to" becomes part of the meaning of the compound. The following are examples of compound verbs of result and their potential forms.

huílai	to come back
huídelái	able to come back
huíbulái	not able to come back
kànjian	to see
kàndejiàn	able to see
kànbujiàn	not able to see
láidejí	able to make it on time
láibují*	not able to make it on time

\*The verb láidejí/láibují does not occur without the inserted -de- or -bu-



zuòwán	to finish doing
zuòdewán	able to finished doing, able to be completed
zuòbuwán	not able to finish doing, not able to be completed

Compound verbs of direction may also occur in the potential form:

nábushànglái	can't carry up [to where you are] (i.e., because something is too heavy or bulky)
kāideshàngqu	can drive up [away from you] (i.e., it is not too steep)
kāidechūlái	can drive out (i.e., the parking place is not too tight)
nábuxiàlái	can't get [it] down (i.e., because it is too high, bolted on, etc.)
zǒudexiàqu	can walk down (i.e., because it is not too far or too steep)

Notice that the last syllables of these compound verbs (except for toneless qu) have full tones when they occur with -de- and -bu-.

7. B: Nàme, wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng zài lóuxiàde huìkèshì děng nín. Well then, I'll wait for you in the reception room downstairs at three o'clock.
- A: Hǎo, sāndiǎn jiàn. Fine. I'll see you at three.

Notes on No. 7

Word order: The first sentence of exchange 7 illustrates the rule TIME--PLACE--ACTION.

Huìkèshì is also pronounced huìkèshǐ.

- |                 |                                |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|
| 8. huídelái     | to be able to get back in time |
| 9. kòng(r)      | free time, spare time          |
| 10. lóushàng    | upstairs                       |
| 11. shāngliang  | to discuss, to talk over       |
| 12. yǒu kòng(r) | to have free time              |

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Here are some sentences illustrating the use of these vocabulary items:

- |                                                 |                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Nǐ sāndiǎn zhōng <u>huídelái</u><br>huíbulái?   | Can you make it back by three o'clock?          |
| <u>Lóushàng</u> hái yǒu rén?                    | Are there still people upstairs?                |
| Wǒ xiǎng hé nǐ <u>shāngliang</u><br>yíjiàn shì. | I would like to talk over a matter<br>with you. |
| Nǐ jīntiān xiàwǔ <u>yǒu kòngr</u><br>ma?        | Do you have time this afternoon?                |

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn nín dāngmiàn tántan.<br/>(<u>cue</u>) Zhāng Kēzhǎng<br/>(I have something I would like to talk with you about in person.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Zhāng Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tántan.<br/>(I have something I would like to talk with Section Chief Zhāng about in person.)</p> |
| <p>2. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Zhāng Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tántan.<br/>tā</p>                                                                                                     | <p>Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn tā dāngmiàn tántan.</p>                                                                                                              |
| <p>3. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn tā dāngmiàn tántan.<br/>Wèi Wǔguān</p>                                                                                                        | <p>Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wèi Wǔguān tántan.</p>                                                                                                               |
| <p>4. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wèi Wǔguān dāngmiàn tántan.<br/>Wáng Shàoxiào</p>                                                                                             | <p>Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Shàoxiào dāngmiàn tántan.</p>                                                                                                   |
| <p>5. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Shàoxiào dāngmiàn tántan.<br/>Lín Xiānsheng</p>                                                                                          | <p>Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Lín Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tántan.</p>                                                                                                   |
| <p>6. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Lín Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tántan.<br/>Liú Kēzhǎng</p>                                                                                            | <p>Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Liú Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tántan.</p>                                                                                                     |
| <p>7. Wǒ yǒu diǎn shì xiǎng gēn Liú Kēzhǎng dāngmiàn tántan.</p>                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                   |

B. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                               |                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nín míngtiān lái ma?<br/>(Are you coming tomorrow?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Bù zhīdào nín míngtiān lái bu lái.<br/>(I don't know whether you are coming tomorrow or not.)</p> |
| <p>OR      Tā zǒu le ma?<br/>(Has he gone?)</p>                               | <p>Bù zhīdào tā zǒu le meiyǒu.<br/>(I don't know whether he has gone or not.)</p>                                |

2. Nín yǒu gōngfu ma?
3. Tā zuótiān qù le ma?
4. Tā yǒu qián ma?
5. Tā hái yào ma?
6. Tā mǎi le ma?

- Bù zhīdào nín yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.  
Bù zhīdào tā zuótiān qù le meiyǒu.  
Bù zhīdào tā yǒu qián meiyǒu.  
Bù zhīdào tā hái yào bu yào.  
Bù zhīdào tā mǎi le meiyǒu.

C. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Shénme shíhou duì nín  
héshì?  
(cue) sāndiǎn  
(What time would suit  
you?)

You: Sāndiǎn duì nín héshì ma?  
(Would three o'clock suit you?)

2. Xīngqījǐ duì nín héshì?  
Xīngqīèr

Xīngqīèr duì nín héshì ma?

3. Zài jǐlóu duì nín héshì?  
wūlóu

Zài wūlóu duì nín héshì ma?

4. Nǎitiān duì nín héshì?  
míngtiān

Míngtiān duì nín héshì ma?

5. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?  
zǎoshang

Zǎoshang duì nín héshì ma?

6. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?  
wǎnshang

Wǎnshang duì nín héshì ma?

7. Jǐdiǎn duì nín héshì?  
shídiǎn

Shídiǎn duì nín héshì ma?

D. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                           |                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?<br>hésì?<br>(cue) jīntiān<br>(What time would suit you?) | <u>You</u> : Jīntiān, míngtiān dōu kényi.<br>(Either today or tomorrow would be fine.) |
| 2. Jīdiǎn duì nín héshì?<br>sāndiǎn                                                                       | Sāndiǎn, sìdiǎn dōu kényi.                                                             |
| 3. Xīngqījǐ duì nín héshì?<br>Xīngqīyī                                                                    | Xīngqīyī, Xīngqīèr dōu kényi.                                                          |
| 4. Jǐhào duì nín héshì?<br>sìhào                                                                          | Sìhào, wǔhào dōu kényi.                                                                |
| 5. Shénme shíhou duì nín héshì?<br>shàngwǔ                                                                | Shàngwǔ, xiàwǔ dōu kényi.                                                              |
| 6. Nǐtiān duì nín héshì?<br>míngtiān                                                                      | Míngtiān, hòutiān dōu kényi.                                                           |
| 7. Xīngqījǐ duì nín héshì?<br>Xīngqīliù                                                                   | Xīngqīliù, Xīngqītiān dōu kényi.                                                       |

E. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Shénme dìfang duì nín fāngbian?<br>fāngbian?<br>(cue) lóushàng<br>(What place would be convenient for you?) | <u>You</u> : Lóushàng duì nín fāngbian,<br>háishi lóuxià duì nín fāngbian?<br>(Would upstairs or downstairs be more convenient for you?) |
| 2. Shénme shíhou duì nín fāngbian?<br>sāndiǎn                                                                                   | Sāndiǎn duì nín fāngbian, háishi sìdiǎn duì nín fāngbian?                                                                                |
| 3. Jǐhào duì nín fāngbian?<br>liùhào                                                                                            | Liùhào duì nín fāngbian, háishi qīhào duì nín fāngbian?                                                                                  |
| 4. Nǐtiān duì nín fāngbian?<br>míngtiān                                                                                         | Míngtiān duì nín fāngbian, háishi hòutiān duì nín fāngbian?                                                                              |
| 5. Shénme shíhou duì nín fāngbian?<br>shàngwǔ                                                                                   | Shàngwǔ duì nín fāngbian, háishi xiàwǔ duì nín fāngbian?                                                                                 |

6. Xīngqījǐ duì nín fāngbian?  
Xīngqīsān

Xīngqīsān duì nín fāngbian, háishi  
Xīngqīsì duì nín fāngbian?

7. Jǐdiǎn duì nín fāngbian?  
jiǔdiǎn

Jiǔdiǎn duì nín fāngbian, háishi  
shídiǎn duì nín fāngbian?

F. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Sāndiǎn fāngbian yìdiǎn.  
(cue) sìdiǎn  
(Three o'clock is a  
little more  
convenient.)

You: Sāndiǎn bǐ sìdiǎn fāngbian  
yìdiǎn.  
(Three o'clock is a little  
more convenient than four  
o'clock.)

2. Sānhào fāngbian yìdiǎn.  
wǔhào

Sānhào bǐ wǔhào fāngbian yìdiǎn.

3. Lóushàng fāngbian yìdiǎn.  
lóuxià

Lóushàng bǐ lóuxià fāngbian yìdiǎn.

4. Tāde qián duō yìdiǎn. wǒde

Tāde qián bǐ wǒde duō yìdiǎn.

5. Tā qù hǎo yìdiǎn. wǒ qù

Tā qù bǐ wǒ qù hǎo yìdiǎn.

6. Tā dà yìdiǎn. wǒ

Tā bǐ wǒ dà yìdiǎn.

7. Zhèige dà yìdiǎn. nèige

Zhèige bǐ nèige dà yìdiǎn.

G. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Tā shuōde kuài yìdiǎn.  
(He speaks a little  
fast.)

You: Tā shuōde bǐ wǒ kuài yìdiǎn.  
(He speaks a little faster  
than I do.)

2. Tā lái de zǎo yìdiǎn.

Tā lái de bǐ wǒ zǎo yìdiǎn.

3. Tā zǒu de wǎn yìdiǎn.

Tā zǒu de bǐ wǒ wǎn yìdiǎn.

4. Tā zuò de hǎo yìdiǎn.

Tā zuò de bǐ wǒ hǎo yìdiǎn.

5. Tā mǎi de shǎo yìdiǎn.

Tā mǎi de bǐ wǒ shǎo yìdiǎn.

6. Tā mǎide duō yìdiǎn.

Tā mǎide bǐ wǒ duō yìdiǎn.

7. Tā xuéde mǎn yìdiǎn.

Tā xuéde bǐ wǒ mǎn yìdiǎn.

#### H. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Nǐ shénme shíhou chūqu?  
(What time are you going out?)

You: Wǒ yìhuǐr jiù chūqu.  
(I'm going out in just a little while.)

OR Nǐ chūqu duō jiǔ?  
(For how long are you going out?)

Wǒ jiù chūqu yìhuǐr.  
(I'm just going out for a little while.)

2. Nǐ shénme shíhou chūlai?

Wǒ yìhuǐr jiù chūlai.

3. Nǐ qù duō jiǔ?

Wǒ jiù qù yìhuǐr.

4. Tā shénme shíhou lái?

Tā yìhuǐr jiù lái.

5. Tā kàn duō jiǔ?

Tā jiù kàn yìhuǐr.

6. Nǐ shénme shíhou zǒu?

Wǒ yìhuǐr jiù zǒu.

#### I. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Zhāng Xiānsheng míngtiān huídelái huíbulái?  
(Will Mr. Zhāng be able to come back tomorrow?)

You: Zhāng Xiānsheng hòutiān cái huílai.  
(Mr. Zhāng won't be able to come back until day after tomorrow.)

2. Wáng Nǚshì Xíngqīsì huídelái huíbulái?

Wáng Nǚshì Xíngqīwǔ cái huílai.

3. Lǐ Tóngzhì shíyìdiǎn huídelái huíbulái?

Lǐ Tóngzhì shíèrdiǎn cái huílai.

4. Lín Kēzhǎng èrshihào huídelái huíbulái?

Lín Kēzhǎng èrshiyīhào cái huílai.

5. Wèi Shàoxiào zhège yuè huídelái huíbulái?

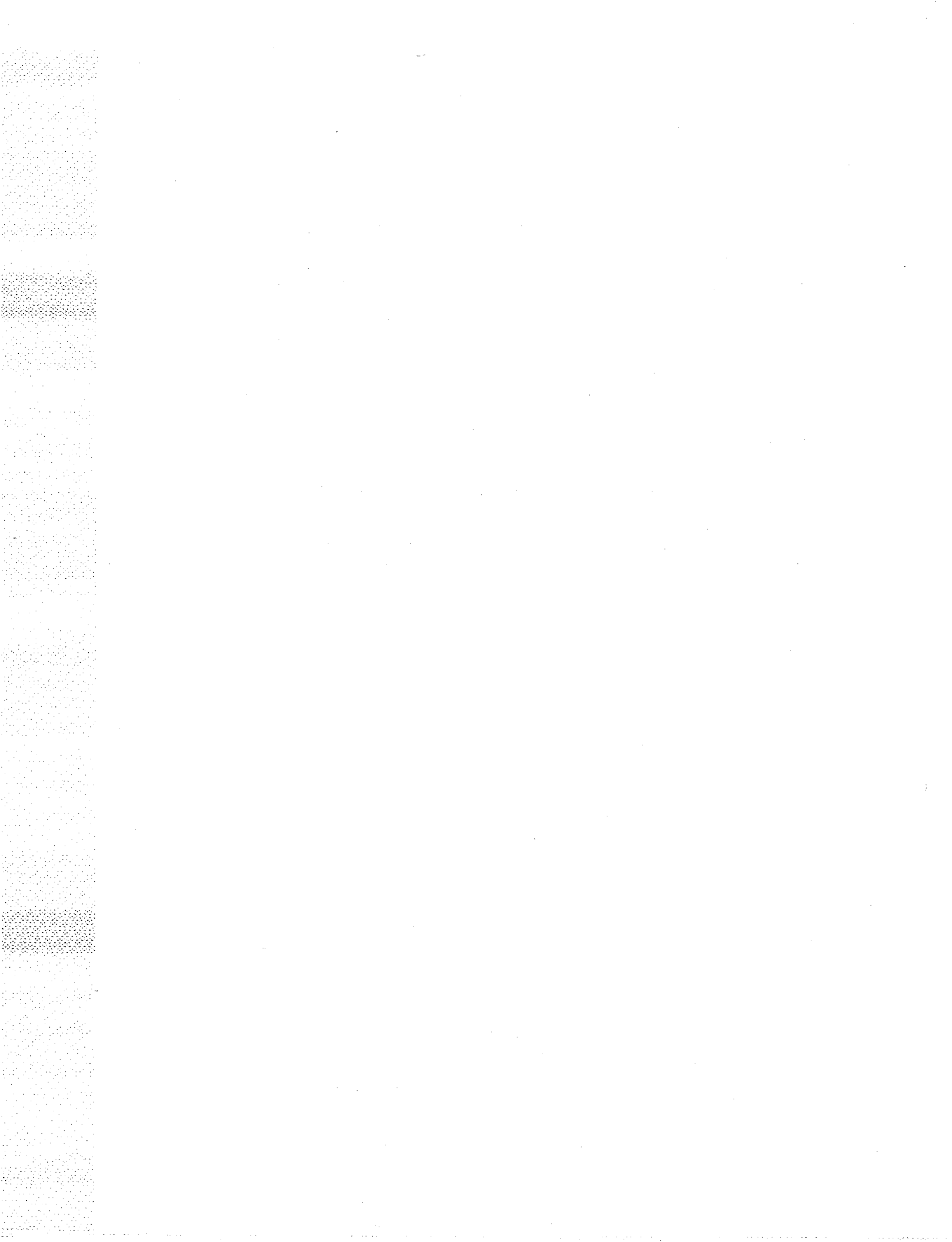
Wèi Shàoxiào xiàge yuè cái huílai.

- |                                               |                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 6. Yáng Xiānsheng zǎoshang huídelái huíbulái? | Yáng Xiānsheng wǎnshang cái huílai. |
| 7. Zhào Tóngzhì jīntiān huídelái huíbulái?    | Zhào Tóngzhì míngtiān cái huílai.   |

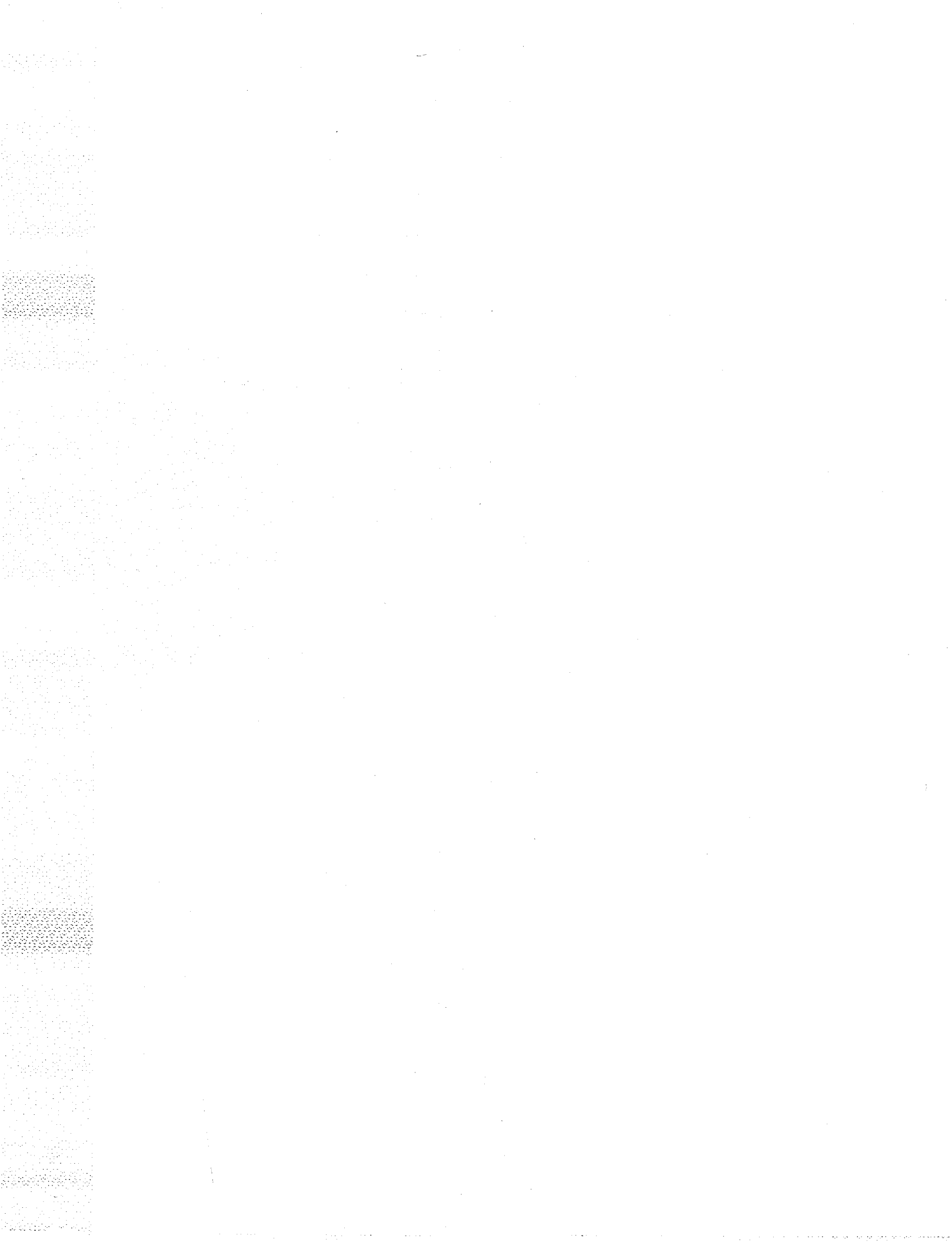
J. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nàme, wǒ zài zhèr dēng nín.<br>(cue) in a moment<br>(In that case, I'll wait for you here.) | <u>You</u> : Nàme, wǒ yìhuǐr zài zhèr dēng nín.<br>(In that case, in a moment I'll wait for you here.) |
| 2. Nàme, wǒ zài lóuxià dēng ta.<br>for a moment                                                                 | Nàme, wǒ zài lóuxià dēng ta yìhuǐr.                                                                    |
| 3. Nàme, wǒ zài lóushàng dēng ta.<br>at one o'clock                                                             | Nàme, wǒ yìdiǎn zhōng zài lóushàng dēng ta.                                                            |
| 4. Nàme, wǒ zài tā nàr dēng nín.<br>for ten minutes                                                             | Nàme, wǒ zài tā nàr dēng nín shífēn zhōng.                                                             |
| 5. Nàme, wǒ zài tā jiā dēng nín.<br>in a moment                                                                 | Nàme, wǒ yìhuǐr zài tā jiā dēng nín.                                                                   |
| 6. Nàme, wǒ zài xiǎomàibù dēng nín.<br>for five minutes                                                         | Nàme, wǒ zài xiǎomàibù dēng nín wǔfēn zhōng.                                                           |
| 7. Nàme, wǒ zài zhèr dēng ta.<br>for a moment                                                                   | Nàme, wǒ zài zhèr dēng ta yìhuǐr.                                                                      |









F. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì,<br>bù néng qù.<br>(cue) no way of going<br>(That day we have a<br>previous engagement;<br>we cannot go.) | <u>You</u> : Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi<br>bānfa qù.<br>(That day we have a previous<br>engagement; we have no way<br>of going.) |
| 2. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi<br>bānfa qù.      cannot go<br>together                                                                               | Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng yìqǐ<br>qù.                                                                                       |
| 3. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng<br>yìqǐ qù.      not all of us<br>can go                                                                          | Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng dōu<br>qù.                                                                                        |
| 4. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, bù néng<br>dōu qù.      none of us can go                                                                                 | Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, dōu bù néng<br>qù.                                                                                        |
| 5. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, dōu bù<br>néng qù.      did not go                                                                                        | Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi qù.                                                                                                   |
| 6. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi qù.<br>not all of us went                                                                                             | Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi dōu qù.                                                                                               |
| 7. Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi dōu<br>qù.                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                  |

- |                                           |                                        |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 5. Wǒ yǐjīng zhuāngào dàshǐ le.<br>nǐ     | Wǒ yǐjīng tì nǐ zhuāngào dàshǐ le.     |
| 6. Wǒ míngtiān jiù zhuāngào dàshǐ.<br>nǐ  | Wǒ míngtiān jiù tì nǐ zhuāngào dàshǐ.  |
| 7. Tā shì zuótiān zhuāngào dàshǐde.<br>nǐ | Tā shì zuótiān tì nǐ zhuāngào dàshǐde. |

E. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                   |                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tāmen míngtiān lái.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) together<br>(They are coming tomorrow.) | <u>You</u> : Tāmen míngtiān yìqǐ lái ma?<br>(Are they coming together tomorrow?) |
| OR Tāmen zuótiān lái le.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) together<br>(They came yesterday.)                     | Tāmen zuótiān shì yìqǐ lái de ma?<br>(Did they come together yesterday?)         |
| 2. Tā míngtiān zǒu. alone                                                                         | Tā míngtiān yíge rén zǒu ma?                                                     |
| 3. Tā zuótiān zǒu le. alone                                                                       | Tā zuótiān shì yíge rén zǒu de ma?                                               |
| 4. Wáng Tóngzhì míngtiān qù Nánjīng. by train                                                     | Wáng Tóngzhì míngtiān zuò huǒchē qù Nánjīng ma?                                  |
| 5. Wáng Tóngzhì Xīngqīyī qù Shànghǎi le. by plane                                                 | Wáng Tóngzhì Xīngqīyī shì zuò fēijī qù Shànghǎi de ma?                           |
| 6. Tā qù le. alone                                                                                | Tā shì yíge rén qù de ma?                                                        |

5. Nǐmen jiēzhào Dàshiguǎnde qǐngtiē le ma? not yet
6. Tā jiēzhào qǐngtiē le ma? no
7. Nǐ jiēzhào Wǔguānchùde qǐngtiē le ma? yes

- Wǒmen hái méi jiēzhào Dàshiguǎnde qǐngtiē.
- Tā méi jiēzhào qǐngtiē.
- Wǒ jiēzhào Wǔguānchùde qǐngtiē le.

C. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Tā bù néng lái.  
(cue) kěxǐ  
(He cannot come.)

You: Hěn kěxǐ, tā bù néng lái.  
(Unfortunately, he cannot come.)

2. Tā xué Zhōngguó huà xuéde bù hěn hǎo. kěxǐ

Hěn kěxǐ, tā xué Zhōngguó huà xuéde bù hěn hǎo.

3. Tā méi lái. yíhàn

Hěn yíhàn, tā méi lái.

4. Tāmen bù néng dōu lái. bàojiàn

Hěn bàojiàn, tāmen bù néng dōu lái.

5. Tāmen dōu bù lái. kěxǐ

Hěn kěxǐ, tāmen dōu bù lái.

6. Tāmen dōu bù néng qù. bàojiàn

Hěn bàojiàn, tāmen dōu bù néng qù.

7. Tā hái méi qù. yíhàn

Hěn yíhàn, tā hái méi qù.

D. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Qǐng nǐ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng.  
(Please inform Minister Zhāng.)

You: Qǐng nǐ tì wǒ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng.  
(Please inform Minister Zhāng for me.)

2. Wǒ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng le. nǐ

Wǒ tì nǐ zhuǎngào Zhāng Bùzhǎng le.

3. Tā hái méi zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng. nǐ

Tā hái méi tì nǐ zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

4. Tā bù néng zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng. wǒ

Tā bù néng tì wǒ zhuǎngào Lǐ Kēzhǎng.

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Tā zài Wàijiāobù<br/>Lǐbīnsī gōngzuò.<br/>(<u>cue</u>) wǔlóu<br/>(He works at the<br/>Ministry of Foreign<br/>Affairs [in] the<br/>Protocol Department.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Tā zài Wàijiāobù Lǐbīnsī gōng-<br/>zuò. Tāde bàngōngshì zài<br/>wǔlóu.<br/>(He works at the Ministry of<br/>Foreign Affairs [in] the<br/>Protocol Department. His<br/>office is on the fifth floor.)</p> |
| <p>2. Tā zài zhèr gōngzuò. qīlóu</p>                                                                                                                                               | <p>Tā zài zhèr gōngzuò. Tāde bàngōngshì<br/>zài qīlóu.</p>                                                                                                                                                              |
| <p>3. Tā zài Jiānádà Dàshiguǎn gōng-<br/>zuò. lóushàng</p>                                                                                                                         | <p>Tā zài Jiānádà Dàshiguǎn gōngzuò.<br/>Tāde bàngōngshì zài lóushàng.</p>                                                                                                                                              |
| <p>4. Tā zài Běijīng gōngzuò.<br/>Guānghuá Lù</p>                                                                                                                                  | <p>Tā zài Běijīng gōngzuò. Tāde<br/>bàngōngshì zài Guānghuá Lù.</p>                                                                                                                                                     |
| <p>5. Zhāng Tóngzhì zài Shànghǎi<br/>gōngzuò. Nánjīng Lù</p>                                                                                                                       | <p>Zhāng Tóngzhì zài Shànghǎi gōngzuò.<br/>Tāde bàngōngshì zài Nánjīng Lù.</p>                                                                                                                                          |
| <p>6. Wáng Nǚshì zài yínháng gōngzuò.<br/>èrlóu</p>                                                                                                                                | <p>Wáng Nǚshì zài yínháng gōngzuò.<br/>Tāde bàngōngshì zài èrlóu.</p>                                                                                                                                                   |
| <p>7. Wèi Shàoxiào zài Wǔguānchù<br/>gōngzuò. sānlóu</p>                                                                                                                           | <p>Wèi Shàoxiào zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.<br/>Tāde bàngōngshì zài sānlóu.</p>                                                                                                                                              |

B. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Dàshǐ jiēzhào qǐngtiě<br/>le ma?<br/>(<u>cue</u>) not yet<br/>(Has the ambassador<br/>received the invita-<br/>tion yet?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Dàshǐ hái méi jiēzhào qǐngtiě.<br/>(The ambassador has not received<br/>the invitation yet.)</p> |
| <p>2. Tāmen dōu jiēzhào qǐngtiě le<br/>ma? not all</p>                                                                                              | <p>Tāmen méi dōu jiēzhào qǐngtiě.</p>                                                                           |
| <p>3. Nǐmen jiēzhào Bùzhǎngde qǐngtiě<br/>le ma? yes</p>                                                                                            | <p>Wǒmen jiēzhào Bùzhǎngde qǐngtiě le.</p>                                                                      |
| <p>4. Tāmen jiēzhào Dàshiguǎnde qǐng-<br/>tiě le ma? already</p>                                                                                    | <p>Tāmen yǐjīng jiēzhào Dàshiguǎnde<br/>qǐngtiě le.</p>                                                         |

- |                                                                                  |                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>7. A: Xīwang yǐhòu zài zhǎo jīhui.<br/>          jùyìjù ba.<br/>B: Hǎo a.</p> | <p>I hope that later we will find<br/>another opportunity to get together.<br/>Okay.</p> |
| <p>8. dàjiā<br/>9. jiēdao</p>                                                    | <p>everybody, everyone<br/>to receive (alternate form for<br/><u>jiēzhào</u>)</p>        |
| <p>10. tóngshì<br/>11. yīngāi</p>                                                | <p>fellow worker, colleague<br/>should, ought to, must</p>                               |

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Literally, dàjiā means "big family." When dàjiā is the subject of a sentence, dōu is often placed before the verb.

- |                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Dàjiā dōu zhīdao tā shì shéi. | Everyone knows who he is.       |
| Xièxie dàjiā.                 | Thank you all.                  |
| Qǐng dàjiā zuòxiàlai.         | Would everyone please sit down. |
| Wǒmen dàjiā yìqǐ qù ba.       | Let's all go together.          |

Yīngāi is an auxiliary verb, which is followed by another verb in a sentence. Only bù is used to make yīngāi negative.

- |                                                                |                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Bú xiè, zhèi shì wǒmen yīng-<br>gāi zuòde shì.                 | Don't thank us. This is something<br>we should be doing.                          |
| Zhèijiàn shìqing hěn yàoqǐn,<br>nǐ yīngāi mǎshàng qù bàn.      | This is a very important thing; you<br>should (go) take care of it right<br>away. |
| Yíge dàxué bìyède rén, bù<br>yīngāi yǒu zhèiyangde<br>xiǎngfa. | Someone who has graduated from<br>college shouldn't think this way.               |



from an outside authority or may be self-imposed.

Nǐ kéyǐ zǒu le.	You may leave.
Cóng zhèige mén jìnqu, kéyǐ ma?	May one go in through this door?
Nàrde fàn kéyǐ chī.	The food there may be eaten. (i.e., it is possible to eat it)
Wǒ bù shūfu, bù kéyǐ yóuyǒng.	I don't feel good; I can't go swimming. (i.e., the speaker decides that he should not go)

The core meaning of huì is "to know how to," "can." Huì is often used for an activity that was learned, in contrast to néng for activities that "can be done" because of a person's physical condition ("Can she get out of bed yet?" Tā néng bu néng xià chuáng?). The other main use of huì is to indicate possibility. Here it overlaps with both néng and kéyǐ in meaning "could be/is possible."

Nǐde érzi huì zǒu lù le ma?	Can your son walk now? (BABY LEARNING TO WALK)
Nǐ huì shuō Yīngwén ma?	Can you speak English?
Míngtiān huì xià yǔ.	It might/will rain tomorrow.
Tā bú huì bù lái.	It is not possible that he won't come.

6. B: Zhēn bù qiǎo. We really couldn't make that.  
 B: Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi bànfa qù. We have a previous engagement that day; we have no way of going.

Notes on No. 6

Bù qiǎo literally means "inopportune," "not timely."

Méi bànfa: Bànfa means "method," "way." Within a sentence, méi bànfa is used as "there is no way to...", "there is no way that..." Used independently, méi bànfa means "nothing can be done," "it can't be helped," "there is no way out."

Wǒ gěi ni mǎi cài.

I will buy groceries for you.  
(WHO PAYS? DID YOU VOLUNTEER ONLY  
TO SHOP, OR TO PAY ALSO?)

Wǒ tì ni mǎi cài.

I will buy groceries for you.  
(CLARIFIED: YOU HAVE VOLUNTEERED ONLY  
TO SHOP, NOT TO PAY.)

Yíxià, "a bit," is not translated in No. 4. This word adds to the action in the sentence a casual feeling, similar to the effect of reduplicating a verb. (Notice that this use of yíxià is different from previous examples, where the word meant "for a little while.")

5. A: Mǎ Mínglǐ, wǒmen yǒu jige  
tóngxué Xīngqīliù jīhuà  
dào Chángchéng qù wánr.  
A: Nǐmen néng bu néng yìqǐ qù?

Mǎ Mínglǐ, a few of us students are  
planning to go to the Great Wall  
Saturday for an outing.  
Can you go with us?

Notes on No. 5

Tóngxué means "fellow student" or "graduate of the same institution."  
"Fellow worker" or "colleague" is tóngshì.

Chángchéng: Cháng means "long," and chéng is an old word for "city wall." The full name of the Great Wall is Wàn lǐ Chángchéng, literally "10,000 lǐ-long wall."\*

Néng, kéyi, and huì compared: All three of these auxiliary verbs--and therefore state verbs--mean "can" to some extent.

The core meaning of néng is "can," "to be able to," "to be capable of." In some cases, néng may also mean "may," "to be permitted," "could be/is possible," and "to know how to."

Wǒde tóu téng, bù néng kàn shū.

My head aches; I can't read.

Shàng kède shíhou, bù néng shuō huà.

Talking is not permitted during class.

Zhījiāgē Shíyīyuè jiù néng xià xuě.

It can snow in November in Chicago.  
(POSSIBILITY)

Tā zhēn néng shuō huà.

He really knows how to talk.

The core meaning of kéyi is "can," "may," "to be permitted to." Kéyi may also mean "could be/is possible." The permission implied by kéyi may come

---

\*One lǐ is approximately one third of a mile.

3. A: Hěn kǎixī, yīnwei tā yǒu shì, Báyüè jiǔhào bù néng lái. Unfortunately, because he has a previous engagement, he cannot come on August 9.  
A: Qǐng ni zhuǎngào Qiáo Bùzhǎng. Please inform Minister Qiáo.  
A: Hěn bàoqiàn. I'm very sorry.

Notes on No. 3

Kǎixī may be used as an exclamation: Zhēn kǎixī! "That's really too bad!"

Zhuǎngào means "to pass along [word of something]." Zhuǎn literally means "to turn" or "to transmit." Gào means "to tell," as in gàosu.

Bàoqiàn is an adjectival verb that means "to be sorry," "to feel apologetic" (e.g., for not fulfilling one's social obligations). Literally, bào means "to embrace [a feeling]," "to harbor [a feeling]." Qiàn means "apologetic feelings," "guilt feelings."

4. B: Hěn yíhàn, Láidēng Dàshǐ bù néng lái. We very much regret that Ambassador Leyden cannot come.  
B: Wǒ tì ni zhuǎngào yíxià. I will pass on the message for you.

Notes on No. 4

Yíhàn is a formal term used to express disappointment or regret that something desirable will not happen.

Tì, "for," "in place of," is a prepositional verb meaning in place of another, or in another's stead.

Jīntiān wǒ tì nǐ jiāo shū. I will teach for you today. (i.e., in your place)

Wǒ tì nǐ qù. I will go for you. (i.e., instead of you)

To make a sentence containing tì negative, place bù or méi in front of the prepositional verb.

Wǒ bú yào tì ni qù mǎi cài. I don't want to go to buy groceries for you.

Tā méi tì wǒ lái jiǎng huà. He did not come to speak in my place.

Both gěi and tì may be translated as "for." Gěi, having a wider range of usage, would seem to overlap in some instances with tì. The more exact meaning of tì may be used to clarify a situation.

REFERENCE NOTES

- |                                       |                                            |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1. B: Wài, zhèi shì Lǐbīnsī.          | Hello. This is the Protocol Department.    |
| A: Wèi, wǒ shì Láidēng Dàshǐde mǐshū. | Hello. I am Ambassador Leyden's secretary. |

Notes on No. 1

Lǐbīnsī, meaning "protocol department," is made up of lǐ, "ceremony"; bīn, "honored guests"; and sī, "department."

Mǐshū means "secretary" in two senses: 1) a high-ranking official  
2) a clerk-typist.

- |                                         |                                          |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 2. A: Dàshǐ jiēzhào nǐmende qǐngtiē le. | The ambassador received your invitation. |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|

Notes on No. 2

The verb jiē, "to receive," may be used for receiving guests, mail, messages, and phone calls.

Jiēzhào (jiēdao), "to receive," is a compound verb of result. The endings -zhào and -dao mean approximately the same thing: "to successfully obtain something" Jiēzhào and jiēdao occur in four ways: with le or méi (describing ACTUAL situations) and with -de- or -bu- (describing POTENTIAL situations)

- |                                                               |                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wǒ zuótiān qù huǒchēzhàn jiē ta, kěshì méi jiēzhào/jiēdao.    | Yesterday I went to the train station to get him, but I missed him.        |
| Nǐ zǎo yìdiǎnr qù jiē ta, jiù jiēdezhào/jiēdedào.             | If you go a little earlier, (then) you can get him.                        |
| Míngtiān yàoshì láiwǎnle jiù jiēbuzhào/jiēbudào tāde diànhuà. | If I am late tomorrow, (then) I won't (be able to) receive his phone call. |

Qǐngtiē refers to a written invitation. The word is also pronounced qǐngtiē.

nánbù	the southern part (of the island), the south
shàngxiào	colonel
tīngdechūlái	to be able to recognize what some- thing is from the sound
tóngxuéhuì	alumni association (literally, "fellow-student group")
tōngzhī	(written) announcement, notification
xièxiè tāde yāoqǐng	to thank him for his invitation
zhèngzhì xuéxí	political study session
zhǔchí jiéhūn	to preside at a marriage ceremony (i.e., to give the bride away)
zǒng jīnglǐ	general manager (chief executive officer)

(introduced in Communication Game)

dàngāo	cake
qìsi	cheese

VOCABULARY

bānfa  
bàoqiān  
bùzhǎng

method, way  
to be sorry  
minister (of a government  
organization)

Chángchéng

the Great Wall

dàjiā

everybody, everyone

jiē

to receive (mail, messages, guests,  
phone calls)

jiēdào

to receive

jù

to assemble

jùyìjù

to get together

kěxǐ

unfortunately, what a pity

Lǐbīnsī

Protocol Department (PRC)

méi bànfa

there's no way out, it can't  
be helped

mìshū

secretary, executive assistant

qiǎo

qǐngtiē (qǐngtiē)

to be timely, to be opportune  
written invitation

tì

tóngshì

tóngxué

substituting for, in place of  
fellow worker, colleague  
classmate

yíhàn

to regret (that something desirable  
will not happen)

yīnggāi

should, ought to, must

zhuǎngào

to pass on a message, to inform

(introduced on C-2 tape)

cānjiā

to participate in, to join, to attend

dào xǐ

to congratulate

dièrtiān

the next day

Jīngjībù

Ministry of Economics

jūnshì yǎnxí

military maneuvers

láodòng mófàn

model worker

UNIT 8

REFERENCE LIST

- |                                                                                 |                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. B: Wài, zhèi shì Lǐbīnsī.                                                    | Hello. This is the Protocol Department.                                                      |
| A: Wèi, wǒ shì Láidēng Dàshǐ-de mìshū.                                          | Hello. I am Ambassador Leyden's secretary.                                                   |
| 2. A: Dàshǐ jiēzhāo nǐmende qǐngtiē le.                                         | The ambassador received your invitation.                                                     |
| 3. A: Hěn kǎixī, yīnwei tā yǒu shì, Báiyuè jiǔ hào bù néng lái.                 | Unfortunately, because he has a previous engagement, he cannot come on August 9.             |
| A: Qǐng ni zhuǎngào Qiáo Bùzhǎng.                                               | Please inform Minister Qiáo.                                                                 |
| A: Hěn bàoqiàn.                                                                 | I'm very sorry.                                                                              |
| 4. B: Hěn yíhàn, Láidēng Dàshǐ bù néng lái.                                     | We very much regret that Ambassador Leyden cannot come.                                      |
| B: Wǒ tī ni zhuǎngào yíxià.                                                     | I will pass on the message for you.                                                          |
| 5. A: Mǎ Mínglǐ, wǒmen yǒu jige tóngxué Xīngqīliù jīhua dào Chángchéng qù wánr. | Mǎ Mínglǐ, a few of us students are planning to go to the Great Wall Saturday for an outing. |
| A: Nǐmen néng bu néng yìqǐ qù?                                                  | Can you go with us?                                                                          |
| 6. B: Zhēn bù qiǎo.                                                             | We really couldn't make that.                                                                |
| B: Nèitiān wǒmen yǒu shì, méi bànfa qù.                                         | We have a previous engagement that day; we have no way of going.                             |
| 7. A: Xīwang yǐhòu zài zhǎo jīhui jù yìjù ba.                                   | I hope that late we will find an other opportunity to get together.                          |
| B: Hǎo a.                                                                       | Okay.                                                                                        |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |             |                                                |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 8. dàjiā    | everybody, everyone                            |
| 9. jiēdào   | to receive (alternate form of <u>jiēzhāo</u> ) |
| 10. tóngshì | fellow worker, colleague                       |
| 11. yīnggāi | should, ought to, must                         |

G. Response Drill

- |                                                                                           |                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ xiànzài lái ma?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) mǎshàng<br>(Are you coming now?) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ mǎshàng lái.<br>(I'm coming right away.) |
| 2. Tā bādiǎn zhōng lái ma?<br>chàbùduō                                                    | Tā chàbùduō bādiǎn zhōng lái.                            |
| 3. Tā shídiǎn zhōng qù ma?<br>zuǒyòu                                                      | Tā shídiǎn zhōng zuǒyòu qù.                              |
| 4. Nǐmen xiànzài zǒu ma?<br>mǎshàng                                                       | Wǒmen mǎshàng zǒu.                                       |
| 5. Tāmen bāhào qù ma? zuǒyòu                                                              | Tāmen bāhào zuǒyòu qù.                                   |
| 6. Tāmen jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái ma?<br>chàbùduō                                                | Tāmen chàbùduō jiǔdiǎn zhōng lái.                        |
| 7. Nǐ shíhào zài Niǔ Yuē ma?<br>zuǒyòu                                                    | Wǒ shíhào zuǒyòu zài Niǔ Yuē.                            |



5. Wǒ kànjianguo.

Wǒ kànjianguo, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi.

6. Wǒ zhīdao tā shi Wáng Xiǎojiěde gēge.

Wǒ zhīdao tā shi Wáng Xiǎojiěde gēge, kěshi wǒ bú rènshi ta.

F. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Chàbuduō bànge zhōngtóu jiù dào.  
(I'll be there in about half an hour.)

You: Bànge zhōngtóu zuǒyòu jiù dào.  
(I'll be there in about half an hour.)

2. Chàbuduō yào yíge zhōngtóu.

Yào yíge zhōngtóu zuǒyòu.

3. Tā zhùle chàbuduō sāntiān.

Tā zhùle sāntiān zuǒyòu.

4. Tā chàbuduō wǔshísuì le.

Tā wǔshísuì zuǒyòu le.

5. Nèiběn shū chàbuduō yào shíkuài qián.

Nèiběn shū yào shíkuài qián zuǒyòu.

6. Chàbuduō yào zǒu sìshiwǔfēn zhōng.

Yào zǒu sìshiwǔfēn zhōng zuǒyòu.

7. Chàbuduō sānge xīngqī.

Sānge xīngqī zuǒyòu.

D. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Tā shi Jiāzhōu Dàxué<br/>bìyède.<br/>(cue) yījiūsìwūnián<br/>(He graduated from the<br/>University of Cali-<br/>fornia.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Tā shi yījiūsìwūnián Jiāzhōu<br/>Dàxué bìyède.<br/>(In 1945 he graduated from the<br/>University of California.)</p> |
| <p>2. Tā shi Táiwān Dàxué bìyède.<br/>yījiūwǔliùnián</p>                                                                                           | <p>Tā shi yījiūwǔliùnián Táiwān Dàxué<br/>bìyède.</p>                                                                               |
| <p>3. Tā shi Mázhōu Dàxué bìyède.<br/>yījiūliùqīnián</p>                                                                                           | <p>Tā shi yījiūliùqīnián Mázhōu Dàxué<br/>bìyède.</p>                                                                               |
| <p>4. Tā shi Dézhōu Dàxué bìyède.<br/>yījiūliùèrnián</p>                                                                                           | <p>Tā shi yījiūliùèrnián Dézhōu Dàxué<br/>bìyède.</p>                                                                               |
| <p>5. Tā shi Běijīng Dàxué bìyède.<br/>yījiūsìqīnián</p>                                                                                           | <p>Tā shi yījiūsìqīnián Běijīng Dàxué<br/>bìyède.</p>                                                                               |
| <p>6. Tā shi Dōngběi Dàxué bìyède.<br/>yījiūsānlíngnián</p>                                                                                        | <p>Tā shi yījiūsānlíngnián Dōngběi<br/>Dàxué bìyède.</p>                                                                            |
| <p>7. Tā shi Nánjīng Dàxué bìyède.<br/>yījiūsānqīnián</p>                                                                                          | <p>Tā shi yījiūsānqīnián Nánjīng Dàxué<br/>bìyède.</p>                                                                              |

E. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wǒ kànjianguo zhèige<br/>zì.<br/>(I have seen this<br/>character before.)</p> <p>OR Wǒ zhīdao tā shi shéi.<br/>(I know who he is.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Wǒ kànjianguo zhèige zì, kěshi<br/>wǒ bú rènshi zhèige zì.<br/>(I have seen this character<br/>before, but I don't recognize<br/>it.)</p> <p>Wǒ zhīdao tā shi shéi, kěshi wǒ<br/>bú rènshi ta.<br/>(I know who he is, but I'm not<br/>acquainted with him.)</p> |
| <p>2. Wǒ kànjianguo Zhāng Xiǎojiě.</p>                                                                                                                       | <p>Wǒ kànjianguo Zhāng Xiǎojiě, kěshi<br/>wǒ bú rènshi Zhāng Xiǎojiě.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <p>3. Wǒ qùguo nèige dìfang.</p>                                                                                                                             | <p>Wǒ qùguo nèige dìfang, kěshi wǒ bú<br/>rènshi nèige dìfang.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <p>4. Wǒ zhīdao tā shi Lǐ Kēzhǎng.</p>                                                                                                                       | <p>Wǒ zhīdao tā shi Lǐ Kēzhǎng, kěshi<br/>wǒ bú rènshi Lǐ Kēzhǎng.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

5. Tā shì něinián dào Zhōngguó qùde wǒ wàng le.
6. Wǒmen zài nàli huàn chē wǒ wàngji le.
7. Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén wǒ wàng le.

Tā shì něinián dào Zhōngguó qùde wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

Wǒmen zài nàli huàn chē wǒ wàngji le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

Yínháng jǐdiǎn zhōng guān mén wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái jìde ma?

C. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pàilaide.  
(cue) zhèli  
(I have heard he was just sent over.)
2. Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pàiqude.  
nàli
3. Tīngshuō Lǐ Xiānsheng shì gāng pàilaide. Táiběi
4. Tīngshuō Wáng Xiǎojiě shì gāng pàiqude. Táinán
5. Tīngshuō tā gēge shì gāng pàilaide. Táizhōng
6. Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pàiqude. Gāoxióng
7. Tīngshuō nín shì gāng pàilaide. zhèli

You: Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pài dào zhèli láiide.  
(I have heard he was just sent over here.)

Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pài dào nàli qùde.

Tīngshuō Lǐ Xiānsheng shì gāng pài dào Táiběi láiide.

Tīngshuō Wáng Xiǎojiě shì gāng pài dào Táinán qùde.

Tīngshuō tā gēge shì gāng pài dào Táizhōng láiide.

Tīngshuō tā shì gāng pài dào Gāoxióng qùde.

Tīngshuō nín shì gāng pài dào zhèli láiide.

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì<br/>xiǎng gēn nín dǎting<br/>dǎting.<br/>(I have something I<br/>would like to ask you<br/>about.)</p> <p>OR Nèijiàn shì, wǒ xiǎng<br/>gēn nín dǎting dǎting.<br/>(I would like to ask<br/>you about that matter.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting yíjiàn<br/>shì.<br/>(I would like to ask you some-<br/>thing.)</p> <p>Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting<br/>nèijiàn shì.<br/>(I would like to ask you about<br/>that matter.)</p> |
| <p>2. Wǒ yǒu hěn duō shì xiǎng gēn<br/>nín dǎting dǎting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <p>Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting hěn duō shì.</p>                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <p>3. Zhèijiàn shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn nín<br/>dǎting dǎting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <p>Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting zhèi-<br/>jiàn shì.</p>                                                                                                                                                             |
| <p>4. Tāde shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn nín<br/>dǎting dǎting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <p>Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting tāde<br/>shì.</p>                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <p>5. Wǒ yǒu jǐjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín<br/>dǎting dǎting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p>Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting jǐjiàn shì.</p>                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <p>6. Nǐde nèijiàn shì, wǒ xiǎng gēn<br/>nín dǎting dǎting.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                | <p>Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting nǐde<br/>nèijiàn shì.</p>                                                                                                                                                           |

B. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Tāde míngzi wǒ wàng<br/>le.<br/>(I have forgotten his<br/>given name.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Tāde míngzi wǒ wàng le, nǐ hái<br/>jìde ma?<br/>(I have forgotten his given<br/>name. Do you remember it?)</p> |
| <p>2. Tāde dìzhǐ wǒ wàngji le.</p>                                                               | <p>Tāde dìzhǐ wǒ wàngji le, nǐ hái<br/>jìde ma?</p>                                                                           |
| <p>3. Tā shénme shíhou lái wǒ wàng<br/>le.</p>                                                   | <p>Tā shénme shíhou lái wǒ wàng le, nǐ<br/>hái jìde ma?</p>                                                                   |
| <p>4. Nèibān fēijiǎ jǐdiǎn zhōng dào<br/>wǒ wàngji le.</p>                                       | <p>Nèibān fēijiǎ jǐdiǎn zhōng dào wǒ<br/>wàngji le, nǐ hái jìde ma?</p>                                                       |

Qǐng bǎ yǐzi bānqilai.	Please lift up the chair.
Qǐng nǐmen zhànqilai.	Please stand up.
Nèige zì wǒ xiǎngqilai le.	I remember that character.

Zuǒyòu (literally, "left-right") means "approximately," "about."

Wǒ wǔdiǎn zuǒyòu lái jiē nǐ.	I will come to get you about five o'clock.
------------------------------	--------------------------------------------

Nǐ qù mǎi diǎnr píngguǒ, hǎo bu hǎo?	How about going to buy some apples?
--------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

Yào duōshǎo?	How many do you want?
--------------	-----------------------

Sānjīn zuǒyòu jiù gòu le.	About three catties should be enough.
---------------------------	---------------------------------------

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

The verb jìde, "to remember," acts like a state verb.

Nǐ jìde Wáng Xiǎo Míng ma?  
Jìde. Tā shì wǒ àiren  
dàxuéde tóngxué.

Do you remember Wáng Xiǎo Míng?  
I remember (him). He is my spouse's  
college classmate.

Wǒ zuótiān bú jìde tā xìng  
shénme. Jīntiān yòu  
xiǎngqilai le.

Yesterday I couldn't remember what  
his name is. Today I remembered  
it (again).

Rènde, "to recognize," "to know," is usually interchangeable with rènshi.  
Both rènshi and rènde are most often made negative with bù.

Nǐ rènde ta ma?  
Bú rènde.

Do you know him?  
No.

Tā lù yě bú rènde.

He doesn't even know the way.

Wǒmen qùnián hái bú rènde.

We did not know each other last year.

Wàng, "to forget," is an action verb.

Wǒ hěn róngyi bǎ rén míngzi  
wàng le.

I forget people's names very easily.

Nǐmen dōu bǎ chēpiào nǎlai  
le ma?

Did all of you bring your bus tickets?

Wǒ wàng le.

I forgot (mine).

Wǒ méi wàng.

I didn't forget.

Wánquán, "completely," is an adverb used to modify verbs.

Tā xiěde zì wánquán duì.

The character he wrote is completely  
right.

Tā wánquán bù dǒng.

He doesn't understand any part of  
this.

Wǒ wánquán bù zhīdào zhèijiàn  
shì.

I don't know anything about this  
matter.

Xiǎngqilai, "to think of," "to remember," is a compound verb of result.  
It is made up of xiǎng, "to think"; qǐ, "to rise"; and lái, "to come."\*  
As an ending showing result, -qǐlái may have either its literal meaning of  
"to come up" or more abstract meanings such as "to come to mind."\*\*

---

\*Xiǎngqilai is actually pronounced xiǎngqilai. The ending -qǐlái is in the  
neutral tone; because qǐ was originally in the third tone, xiǎng changes  
to the rising tone.

\*\*English prepositions, such as "up," are also used both literally and  
abstractly: "look up the wall" (an upward motion) and "look up the phone  
number" (no motion indicated by "up")

Nà shì yìge hěn dàde wèntí. That's a big problem.

Nǐ yǒu wèntí ma? could mean either "Do you have any questions?" or "Are you having any problems?"

7. A: Xíng. That will be fine.  
A: Wǒ mǎshàng dào nín bàngōngshì lái. I'll come to your office right away.  
A: Chābuduō bànge zhōngtóu jiù dào. I'll be there in about half an hour.

Notes on No. 7

The adverb mǎshàng (literally, "on horseback") means "immediately," "right away."

Chābuduō may be translated fairly literally as "does not differ much." Other translations are "about," "approximately," "almost."

- Chābuduō bādiǎn le. It is nearly eight o'clock.  
Zhèběn shū wǒ chābuduō kǎnwán le. I have almost finished reading this book.  
Tāmen chābuduō bādiǎn zhōng lái. They are coming at around eight o'clock.  
Nàge xuéxiào yǒu chābuduō sānbǎige xuésheng. That school has approximately three hundred students.

8. jìde to remember  
9. rènde to recognize, to know (alternate word for rènshi)  
10. rènshi zì to know how to read (literally, "to recognize characters")  
11. wàng to forget (alternate word for wàngji, especially in the sense of forgetting to DO something)  
12. wánquán completely  
13. xiǎngqilai to think of, to remember  
14. zuǒyǒu approximately

5. A: Bú rènshi. I don't know him.  
 A: Búguò tīngshuō tā yě shi However, I have heard that he also  
 Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède, suóyì graduated from the University of  
 xiǎng qǐng ni gěi wo jièshao California, so I wanted to ask  
 jièshao. you to introduce me to him.

Note on No. 5

Shi Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède, "graduated from the University of California":  
 The name of a school or a word describing the type of school may stand  
 in front of the verb bìyè with no preceding prepositional verb, such as  
cóng, "from."

- Nǐ érzi yǐjīng dàxué/zhōng- Has your son graduated from college/  
 xué/xiǎoxué bìyè le ma? high school/elementary school  
 already?  
 Tā dàxué hái méi bìyè ne. He has not graduated from college yet.  
 Tā shi Táiwān Dàxué bìyède. He graduated from Taiwan University.

Bìyè may also be preceded by either zài, "at," or cóng, "from."

- Nǐ shi zài nǎige zhōngxué What high school did you graduate  
 bìyède? from?  
 Wǒ qùnián cóng Dézhōu Dàxué I graduated last year from the  
 bìyè le. University of Texas.  
 Wǒ shi qībānián cóng Běijīng I graduated from Běijīng University  
 Dàxué bìyède. in '78.

Bìyè, meaning "to complete a course of study," is a compound made up of a  
 verb plus a general object. For this reason, the object yè may be separated  
 from the verb bì. This separation occurs most frequently in sentences  
 containing the shì...de construction.

Tā shi yījiǔqīliùnián bìde yè. He graduated in 1976.

6. B: Méi wèntí. Wǒ kànkān...hǎo, No problem. I'll take a look....  
 wǒmen xiànzài dōu yǒu Okay, we are both free now.  
 gōngfu.  
 B: Nǐ xiànzài néng lái ma? Can you come now?

Note on No. 6

The noun wèntí can mean "question," "problem," or "difficulty."

Tā wènle hǎoduō wèntí. He asked a lot of questions.



Rènshi the state verb means "to know" in the sense of "to be acquainted with," "to be familiar with," "to recognize." As an action verb, rènshi means "to meet," "to get acquainted with."

(STATE VERB)

Nǐ rènshi Zhāng Guóquán ma?	Do you know Zhāng Guóquán?
Nǐ rènshi ta ma?	Do you know him?
Wǒmen bú tài rènshi.	We are not too well acquainted.
Wǒmen qùnián hái bú rènshi.	We did not know each other yet last year.

(ACTION VERB)

Wǒ zài Měiguode shíhou, rènshile hěn duō Měiguó niánqīng rén.*	When I was in America, I met a lot of young Americans.
Wǒ shi qiánnián rènshi tade.	I met him the year before last.
Nèige shíhou wǒmen hái méi rènshi.	At that time we had not yet met.
Tā shi yíge hěn hǎode rén, nǐ yīnggāi rènshi renshi.**	He is a very good person; you should get to know him.

As a state verb, rènshi is used for "knowing" or "recognizing" Chinese characters.

Nǐ rènshi duōshǎoge Zhōngguó zì?	How many Chinese characters do you know/recognize?
Nǐ rènshi zhèige zì ma?	Do you recognize this character?

Contrast the meanings of rènshi and zhīdao: rènshi, "to know" a person; zhīdao, "to know of" a person

Nǐ <u>rènshi</u> Táng Xiǎojiě ma?	Do you <u>know</u> Miss Táng?
Wǒ <u>zhīdao</u> ta, dànshi wǒmen méi jiànguo.	I <u>know of</u> her, but we haven't met.

When a place is being discussed, rènshi means "to know how to get [there]." Zhīdao continues to mean "to know of [a place]."

Nǐ <u>rènshi</u> nèige diànyǐngyuàn ma?	Do you <u>know how to get to</u> that movie theater?
Nǐ <u>zhīdao</u> nèige diànyǐngyuàn ma?	Do you <u>know of</u> that movie theater?

---

\*niánqīng, "to be young"

\*\*yīnggāi, "should"

Pài dào...lái is a three-part verb: action verb (also expressing MOTION), prepositional verb (must take an object), and directional verb (lái, qù)

ACTION VERB	PREPOSITIONAL VERB	OBJECT	DIRECTIONAL VERB	
pǎo	dào	shānshang	qù	"to run up on the hill"
bān	dào	zhèr	lái	"to move it into here"
ná	dào	xuéxiào	qù	"to take it to school"
zǒu	dào	hòubianr	lái	"to walk to the back"

Zěnmē, "why," "how come," "how is it that...,"\* is a more colloquial and challenging word for "why" than wèishénmē. Only a reason or an explanation is requested by wèishénmē. Zěnmē expresses more, emphasizing the speaker's surprise or lack of understanding.

Nímēnde bàngōngshì zěnmē zěnmē xiǎo?	How is it that your office is so small?
Tā fùmǔ dōu shuō Zhōngguó huà, tā zěnmē bú huì shuō?	Both his parents speak Chinese. How is it that he can't?
Zěnmē yào jǐnde shì, wǒ zěnmē wàngle zuò le?	How could I have forgotten to do such an important thing?
Nǐ zěnmē bú niàn shū ne?	How come you're not studying?
Nǐ zěnmē bù shuō huà? Yǒu shénmē bù gāoxìngde shì ma?	How come you're not saying anything? Is there something you are unhappy about?

The meaning of zěnmē is sometimes affected by the aspect marker used:

Nǐ zěnmē lái le?	How come you are here? (i.e., "What are you doing here?")
Nǐ (shì) zěnmē lái de?	How did you get here? (i.e., by what means of transportation)

---

\*You have already learned that zěnmē can mean "how."

Míngzi means "name"--of an object, a place, or a person (GIVEN NAME). Occasionally, míngzi is used for a person's full name (surname and given name). This usage is more common in the PRC.

Wàngji is a verb meaning "to forget"--used especially in reference to forgetting facts. Wàng, "to forget," is more commonly used for forgetting to do something. The verb jìde means "to remember."

4. B: Bú cuò, Fāng Dé míng shì shàngge lǐbài pài dào wǒmen zhèli lái de.  
B: Zěnme? Nǐ rènshi ta ma?
- That's right. Fāng Dé míng was sent over here last week.  
Why? Do you know him?

Notes on No. 4

Bú cuò means "not bad" in the sense of "pretty good," "pretty well," "all right."

Nǐ zěnmeyàng?  
Bú cuò.

How are things going?  
Not bad.

In the first sentence of No. 4, bú cuò means "that's right, your information is not wrong."

Lǐ Xiānsheng, nǐ gāng cóng Xiānggǎng huílai, shì ma?  
Bú cuò, wǒ shì zuótiān huí lái de.

Mr. Lǐ, you just got back from Hong Kong, didn't you?  
That's right. I got back yesterday.

Here are more examples of bú cuò:

Nèige fānguǎnzide cài zhēn bú cuò.

That restaurant really has pretty good food.

Tā shuō Zhōngguó huà, shuōde bú cuò.

He speaks Chinese pretty well.

In the first example, notice that an adverb precedes bú cuò: zhēn bú cuò

3. B: Shénme shì? What is it?  
 A: Tīngshuō nín nàbian xīn I have heard that you recently had  
 láiile yíwèi Fāng Xiān- a Mr. Fāng join you, who has just  
 sheng, shi gāng pàilaide; been assigned to your office. I  
 tāde míngzi wǒ wàngji le. have forgotten his given name.

Notes on No. 3

Tīngshuō corresponds to the English "I hear that...."

...láile yíwèi Fāng Xiānsheng, "there came a Mr. Fāng": While "a" and "the" are used in English to distinguish between indefinite and definite, word order accomplishes the same distinction in Chinese. The subject "A Mr. Fāng" is placed AFTER the verb because the subject is indefinite. With an indefinite subject following the verb, information preceding the verb may give location, time, or other scene-setting details.

Zhèr xīn kāile yige hěn hǎode fànguǎnzi.	A very good restaurant opened here recently.
Zuótiān láiile yíxiē Rìběn rén.	Some Japanese came yesterday.
Yǐjīng qùle wǔbǎige rén.	Five hundred people have already gone there.

Verbs of appearing and verbs of disappearing ("to come," "to discover," "to happen/occur") introduce indefinite subjects, as do the words yǒu and yǒude.

Wàibian yǒu jige rén zhǎo nǐ.	There are some people outside who want to see you.
Yǒude rén bù xǐhuan hē chá.	Some people don't like to drink tea.

Some situations may be described with either yǒu or another verb.

Zuótiān yǒu yige rén lái zhǎo nǐ.	Yesterday there was someone here looking for you.
Zuótiān láiile yige rén yào zhǎo ni dāngmiàn tántan.	Yesterday someone was here who was looking for you to talk with you in person.

Subjects occurring at the end of a sentence are indefinite, whether or not they are accompanied by yige. Subjects preceding the verb in a sentence are definite, whether or not they are accompanied by zhèige, nèige, zhèixiē, nèixiē, or other specifying words.

Lái rén le.	Some people have come.
Rén lái le.	The people have come. (i.e., those whom we were expecting)

REFERENCE NOTES

- |    |                                                                         |                                                                 |
|----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. | B: Wèi.                                                                 | Hello.                                                          |
|    | A: Zhāng Xiānsheng ma?                                                  | Is this Mr. Zhāng?                                              |
| 2. | B: Shìde. Nín shì bu shi Bái Nǚshì?                                     | Yes. Is this Miss White?                                        |
|    | A: Shì. Zhāng Xiānsheng, wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting. | Yes. Mr. Zhāng, I have something I would like to ask you about. |

Notes on Nos. 1-2

Gēn nín dǎting, "ask information from you": Note that the prepositional verb gēn is translated as "from." Dǎting, "to inquire," is less formal than qǐngjiào and requests information rather than advice.

Objects of reduplicated verbs: Reduplicated verbs may be followed only by DEFINITE objects. Indefinite objects of reduplicated verbs precede those verbs. In the last sentence of exchange 2, the object of the reduplicated verb dǎting dǎting is indefinite: yíjiàn shì, "a matter" Thus the object is introduced in the clause wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì which precedes the entire verb phrase xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting.

Reduplicating a verb makes it indefinite; adding an indefinite object might cause confusion. The reduplicated verbs in the sentences below have definite objects:

- |                                                  |                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting nèijiàn shì.      | I would like to ask you about that.                   |
| Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting zhèijiàn shì.     | I would like to ask you about this.                   |
| Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting tāde shì.         | I would like to ask you about his matter (about him). |
| Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting nǐde nèijiàn shì. | I would like to ask you about that matter of yours.   |

Simple verbs are used in the following sentences, which have indefinite objects:

- |                                      |                                                |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting yídiǎn shì.  | I would like to ask you about something.       |
| Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting hěn duō shì. | I would like to ask you about a lot of things. |
| Wǒ xiǎng gēn nín dǎting jǐjiàn shì.  | I would like to ask you about a few things.    |

VOCABULARY

bìyè	to graduate
bú cuò	not bad, pretty good; that's right
chābuduō	almost, about, approximately
dǎting	to inquire about, to ask about
jìde	to remember
mǎshàng	immediately
méi wèntí	(there's) no problem
pài dào	to send to
pàilái	to send here
rènde	to recognize, to know
rènshi	to recognize, to know
rènshi zì	to know how to read (literally, "to recognize characters")
tīngshuō	to hear that
wàng	to forget
wàngji	to forget
wánquán	completely
wèntí	problem, question
xiǎngqilai	to think of, to remember
zuǒyòu	approximately
 (introduced on C-2 tape)	
cōngming	to be intelligent
duōde duō	much more
kěnéng	maybe
Shìjiè Yínháng	World Bank
xiū jià	to take a vacation
yánjiuyuàn	graduate school
yàobushi...jiù shi...	if it's not...then it will be...
yònggōng	to be hardworking
yuèchū	the beginning of the month
yuèdǐ	the end of the month

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                |                                                                                                      |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 8. jìde        | to remember                                                                                          |
| 9. rènđe       | to recognize, to know (alternate word for <u>rènshi</u> )                                            |
| 10. rènshi zì  | to know how to read (literally, "to recognize characters")                                           |
| 11. wàng       | to forget (alternate word for <u>wàngji</u> , especially in the sense of forgetting to DO something) |
| 12. wánquán    | completely                                                                                           |
| 13. xiǎngqilai | to think of, to remember                                                                             |
| 14. zuǒyù      | approximately                                                                                        |

UNIT 7

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

- |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. B: Wèi.                                                                                           | Hello.                                                                                                                              |
| A: Zhāng Xiānsheng ma?                                                                               | Is this Mr. Zhāng?                                                                                                                  |
| 2. B: Shìde. Nín shì bu shì Bái Nǚshì?                                                               | Yes. Is this Miss White?                                                                                                            |
| A: Shì. Zhāng Xiānsheng, wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn nín dǎting dǎting.                              | Yes. Mr. Zhāng, I have something I would like to ask you about.                                                                     |
| 3. B: Shénme shì?                                                                                    | What is it?                                                                                                                         |
| A: Tīngshuō nín nàbian xīn láiile yíwèi Fāng Xiānsheng, shì gāng pàilaide; tāde míngzi wǒ wàngji le. | I have heard that you recently had a Mr. Fāng join you, who has just been assigned to your office. I have forgotten his given name. |
| 4. B: Bú cuò, Fāng Démíng shì shàngge lǐbài pài dào wǒmen zhèli láiide.                              | That's right. Fāng Démíng was sent over here last week.                                                                             |
| B: Zěnme? Nǐ rènshi ta ma?                                                                           | Why? Do you know him?                                                                                                               |
| 5. A: Bú rènshi.                                                                                     | I don't know him.                                                                                                                   |
| A: Búguò tīngshuō tā yě shì Jiāzhōu Dàxué bìyède, suóyì xiǎng qǐng nǐ gěi wǒ jièshào jièshào.        | However, I have heard that he also graduated from the University of California, so I wanted to ask you to introduce me to him.      |
| 6. B: Méi wèntí. Wǒ kànkan... hǎo, wǒmen xiànzài dōu yǒu gōngfu.                                     | No problem. I'll take a look.... Okay, we are both free now.                                                                        |
| B: Nǐ xiànzài néng lái ma?                                                                           | Can you come now?                                                                                                                   |
| 7. A: Xíng.                                                                                          | That will be fine.                                                                                                                  |
| A: Wǒ mǎshàng dào nín bàngōngshì lái.                                                                | I'll come to your office right away.                                                                                                |
| A: Chàbuduō bàngē zhōngtóu jiù dào.                                                                  | I'll be there in about half an hour.                                                                                                |

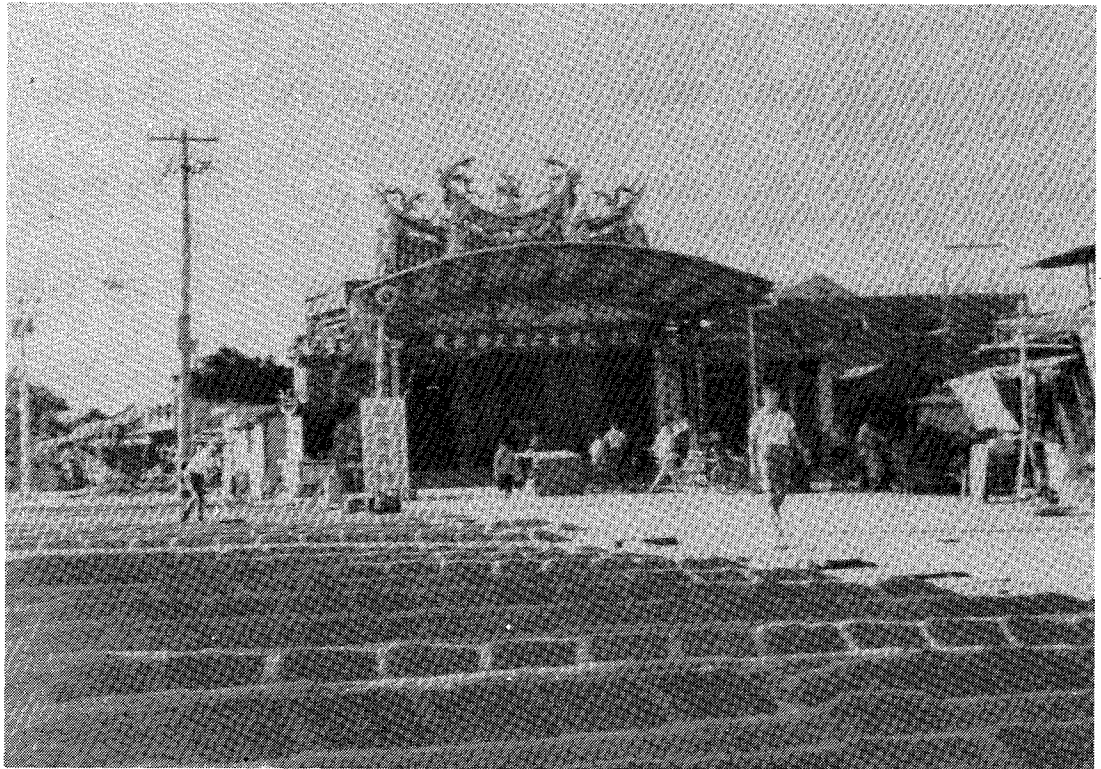


6. Nàrde diànshì fēicháng hǎo.  
mǎi

Nàrde diànshì fēicháng hǎo, biéde  
dìfang mǎibuzhào.

7. Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo.  
chī

Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo, biéde  
dìfang chībuzhào.



Drying rice in front of a temple in central Taiwan

G. Combination Drill

- |                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Zhèiběn shū hěn hǎo.<br/>Zhèiběn shū hěn piányi.<br/>(This book is good.<br/>This book is inexpensive.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Zhèiběn shū yòu hǎo yòu piányi.<br/>(This book is both good and inexpensive.)</p> |
| <p>2. Nǐ mǎide dītú hěn hǎo. Nǐ mǎide dītú hěn piányi.</p>                                                                        | <p>Nǐ mǎide dītú yóu hǎo yòu piányi.</p>                                                         |
| <p>3. Tā zhùde fàndiàn hěn hǎo. Tā zhùde fàndiàn hěn dà.</p>                                                                      | <p>Tā zhùde fàndiàn yòu hǎo yòu dà.</p>                                                          |
| <p>4. Nèibān fēijiǐ hěn kuài. Nèibān fēijiǐ hěn piányi.</p>                                                                       | <p>Nèibān fēijiǐ yòu kuài yòu piányi.</p>                                                        |
| <p>5. Zuò huǒchē qù hěn hǎo. Zuò huǒchē qù hěn fāngbian.</p>                                                                      | <p>Zuò huǒchē qù yòu hǎo yòu fāngbian.</p>                                                       |
| <p>6. Zhège fànguǎnzi hěn jìn. Zhège fànguǎnzi hěn piányi.</p>                                                                    | <p>Zhège fànguǎnzi yòu jìn yòu piányi.</p>                                                       |
| <p>7. Tā mǎide dītǎn hěn piányi. Tā mǎide dītǎn hěn hǎo.</p>                                                                      | <p>Tā mǎide dītǎn yòu piányi yòu hǎo.</p>                                                        |

H. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Zhèrde ròu fēicháng hǎo.<br/>(cue) chī<br/>(The meat here is exceptionally good.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Zhèrde ròu fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang chībuzháo.<br/>(The meat here is exceptionally good. You can't find anything like it anywhere else.)</p> |
| <p>2. Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo. mǎi</p>                                                                       | <p>Nàrde cài fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang mǎibuzháo.</p>                                                                                                        |
| <p>3. Nàrde táng fēicháng hǎo. mǎi</p>                                                                      | <p>Nàrde táng fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang mǎibuzháo.</p>                                                                                                       |
| <p>4. Zhèrde diànyǐng fēicháng hǎo.<br/>kàn</p>                                                             | <p>Zhèrde diànyǐng fēicháng hǎo, biéde dìfang kàn buzháo.</p>                                                                                                 |
| <p>5. Zhèrde shū fēicháng duō.<br/>kàn</p>                                                                  | <p>Zhèrde shū fēicháng duō, biéde dìfang kàn buzháo.</p>                                                                                                      |

5. Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián, Wáng  
Xiānshengde qián dōu hěn duō.  
the same
6. Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián, Wáng  
Xiānshengde qián dōu hěn duō.  
less
7. Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián, Wáng  
Xiānshengde qián dōu hěn duō.  
even more

Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián gēn Wáng  
Xiānshengde qián yíyàng duō.

Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián méiyǒu Wáng  
Xiānshengde qián nǎme duō.

Zhāng Xiǎojiěde qián bǐ Wáng  
Xiānshengde qián gèng duō.

F. Substitution Drill

1. Speaker: Nǐmen zhèrde cài hěn  
hǎo.  
(cue) exceptionally  
(Your food here is  
very good.)

You: Nǐmen zhèrde cài fēicháng hǎo.  
(Your food here is exceptionally  
good.)

2. Nǐmen zhèrde cài fēicháng hǎo.  
extremely

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojíle.

3. Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojíle.  
a little (more)

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎo yìdiǎn.

4. Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎo yìdiǎn.  
even more

Nǐmen zhèrde cài gèng hǎo.

5. Nǐmen zhèrde cài gèng hǎo.  
extremely

Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojíle.

6. Nǐmen zhèrde cài hǎojíle.  
especially

Nǐmen zhèrde cài tèbié hǎo.

7. Nǐmen zhèrde cài tèbié hǎo.

D. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Nèige fànguǎnzi lí zhèr hěn jìn.<br/>(<u>cue</u>) zhèige<br/>(That restaurant is very close to here.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Zhèige fànguǎnzi bǐ nèige fànguǎnzi lí zhèr gèng jìn.<br/>(This restaurant is even closer to here than that restaurant.)</p> |
| <p>2. Tā jiā lí zhèr hěn jìn.<br/>wǒ jiā</p>                                                                                    | <p>Wǒ jiā bǐ tā jiā lí zhèr gèng jìn.</p>                                                                                                   |
| <p>3. Nèige yínháng lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.<br/>Zhōngguo Yínháng</p>                                                                  | <p>Zhōngguo Yínháng bǐ nèige yínháng lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.</p>                                                                                 |
| <p>4. Wǔlù Qìchēzhàn lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.<br/>nèige Qìchēzhàn</p>                                                                  | <p>Nèige Qìchēzhàn bǐ Wǔlù Qìchēzhàn lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.</p>                                                                                 |
| <p>5. Wǔguānchù lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.<br/>Dàshiguǎn</p>                                                                             | <p>Dàshiguǎn bǐ Wǔguānchù lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.</p>                                                                                            |
| <p>6. Huǒchēzhàn lí zhèr hěn jìn.<br/>Gōnglùjú chēzhàn</p>                                                                      | <p>Gōnglùjú chēzhàn bǐ Huǒchēzhàn lí zhèr gèng jìn.</p>                                                                                     |
| <p>7. Wú Kēzhǎng jiā lí zhèr hěn yuǎn.<br/>Lǐ Jiàoshòu jiā</p>                                                                  | <p>Lǐ Jiàoshòu jiā bǐ Wú Kēzhǎng jiā lí zhèr gèng yuǎn.</p>                                                                                 |

E. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián.<br/>(<u>cue</u>) the same<br/>(Both Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng have money [are rich].)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Zhāng Xiǎojiě gēn Wáng Xiānsheng yíyàng yǒu qián.<br/>(Miss Zhāng and Mr. Wáng are equally rich.)</p> |
| <p>2. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián. more</p>                                                                                                | <p>Zhāng Xiǎojiě bǐ Wáng Xiānsheng yǒu qián.</p>                                                                     |
| <p>3. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián. less</p>                                                                                                | <p>Zhāng Xiǎojiě méiyǒu Wáng Xiānsheng nàme yǒu qián.</p>                                                            |
| <p>4. Zhāng Xiǎojiě, Wáng Xiānsheng dōu yǒu qián. even more</p>                                                                                           | <p>Zhāng Xiǎojiě bǐ Wáng Xiānsheng gèng yǒu qián.</p>                                                                |

- |                                 |                                       |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 4. Tāde qián bǐ wǒde qián duō.  | Wǒde qián méiyǒu tāde qián nàme duō.  |
| 5. Nèige ròu bǐ zhèige ròu guì. | Zhèige ròu méiyǒu nèige ròu nàme guì. |
| 6. Jiù shū bǐ xīn shū piányi.   | Xīn shū méiyǒu jiù shū nàme piányi.   |
| 7. Tā kāi chē bǐ wǒ kāide kuài. | Wǒ kāi chē méiyǒu tā kāide nàme kuài. |

C. Combination Drill

- |                                                                                               |                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Bú tài hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā jìn.<br>(It is not too good. It is close to us.) | <u>You</u> : Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā jìn.<br>(Even though it is not too good, it is close to us.) |
| OR Hěn hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.<br>(It is very good. It is too far from us.)               | Suīrán hěn hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.<br>(Even though it is very good, it is too far from us.)           |
| 2. Bú tài fāngbian. Lí wǒmen jiā jìn.                                                         | Suīrán bú tài fāngbian, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā jìn.                                                                 |
| 3. Bú tài piányi. Lí wǒmen jiā jìn.                                                           | Suīrán bú tài piányi, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā jìn.                                                                   |
| 4. Hěn piányi. Lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.                                                         | Suīrán hěn piányi, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.                                                                 |
| 5. Hěn hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.                                                            | Suīrán hěn hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā tài yuǎn.                                                                    |
| 6. Bú tài hǎo. Lí wǒmen jiā hěn jìn.                                                          | Suīrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen jiā hěn jìn.                                                                  |

DRILLS

A. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Jīntiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù  
chī zhōngfàn, hǎo  
ma?  
(Let's go have lunch  
together today.  
Okay?)

OR Jīntiān wǒ qǐng ni qù  
chī zhōngfàn.  
(Today I am inviting  
you to go to eat  
lunch.)

You: Hǎo, jīntiān wǒ qǐng ni.  
(All right. Today I'm inviting  
you.)

Bié kèqi, wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī  
zhōngfàn.  
(Don't be so polite. Let's  
just go together and split  
the bill.)

2. Míngtiān zhōngwǔ wǒmen yìqǐ qù  
chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?

Hǎo, míngtiān zhōngwǔ wǒ qǐng ni.

3. Míngtiān zhōngwǔ wǒ qǐng ni qù  
chī zhōngfàn.

Bié kèqi, wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī  
zhōngfàn.

4. Xīngqīwǔ wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī  
zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?

Hǎo, Xīngqīwǔ wǒ qǐng ni.

5. Xīngqīliù wǒ qǐng ni qù chī  
zhōngfàn.

Bié kèqi, wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī  
zhōngfàn.

6. Míngtiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī  
zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?

Hǎo, míngtiān wǒ qǐng ni.

B: Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Nèige ròu bǐ zhèige  
ròu hǎo.  
(This meat is better  
than that meat.)

You: Zhèige ròu méiyǒu nèige ròu  
nàme hǎo.  
(This meat is not as good as  
that meat.)

2. Xīnde bǐ jiùde hǎo.

Jiùde méiyǒu xīnde nàme hǎo.

3. Dàhuáde cài bǐ Dōngménde cài  
hǎo.

Dōngménde cài méiyǒu Dàhuáde cài  
nàme hǎo.

6. bù yídìng	not necessarily; it's not definite
7. kànfa	opinion, view
8. wǎnfàn	supper, dinner
9. xiǎngfa	idea, opinion
10. yìxiē	some, several, a few
11. zǎofàn	breakfast
12. zuòfa	way of doing things, method, practice

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Kànfa, "opinion," "view," may be loosely translated as "way of looking at things." The word is made up of kàn, "to look," and fǎ, "method," "way."

Wǒmen duì zhèijiàn shìde  
kànfa bù yíyàng.      Our opinions on this matter are not  
the same.

Xiǎngfa, "idea," "opinion," is made up of xiǎng, "to think," and fǎ, "method," "way." Xiǎngfa is a "way of thinking." The word is actually pronounced xiǎngfa.

Tāde xiǎngfa gēn wǒde yíyàng.      His way of thinking is the same as  
mine.

Zuòfa, "way of doing things," "method," "practice," is made up of the verb zuò, "to do," and fǎ, "method," "way."

Nǐde mùdì hěn hǎo, kěshì wǒ  
bù xǐhuan nǐde zuòfa.      Your goal is good, but I don't like  
your methods.

5. A: Nǐ shuōde dìfang yíding hǎo. Any place you suggest is sure to be good.  
 B: Tāmen nàli yǒu hǎoxiē cài They have a good many dishes there  
 biéde dìfang chībuzháo. that you can't find (at) other places.

Notes on No. 5

Yíding, "certainly," can act as either an adverb or an adjectival verb.

(ADVERB)

Tā yíding lái.	He will definitely come.
Wǒ bù yíding qù.	It's not certain that I will go.
Wǒ hái bù yíding qù.	It's not yet certain that I will go.

(ADJECTIVAL VERB)

Nǐ nǎitiān qù?	On what day are you going there?
Hái bù yíding.	It's not certain yet.
Nà shì yídingde.	That's for sure.

Hǎoxiē means "a good many" or "a lot." You have seen -xiē, "several," "some," in zhèixiē, "these," and nèixiē, "those." The element -xiē also occurs in yìxiē, "some," "a few": Shūjiǎzishang hái yǒu yìxiē shū, "There are still a few books on the bookcase."

Biéde is the word for "other" in the sense of "a different one."  
Lìngwài is the word for "other" when you mean "an additional one."

Chībuzháo: In this compound verb of result, the ending -zháo indicates success in obtaining something. Here are some examples of compounds ending in -zháo:

Wǒ zhǎobuzháo tāde diànhuà hàomǎr.	I cannot find his phone number.
Jīntiān méi mǎizháo píngguǒ.	I did not succeed in buying apples today.



Use the pattern ...méiyou...nàme + state verb to say that one thing is less than another.

Wǒde zì méiyou tāde nàme hǎokàn.	My characters don't look as good as his.
Tā xiǎng mǎide fángzi méiyou zhèige fángzi jìn.	The house she wants to buy isn't as close as this one.

The affirmative pattern ...yǒu...nàme + state verb is ambiguous: it says that one item is AT LEAST AS expensive as another item which is either equally expensive or less expensive. This pattern is not as common as ...méiyou...nàme + state verb.

The adverbs gèng, "even more," and zuì, "most," are easily used to compare more than two things. (Place these adverbs before the verb in a sentence.)

Zhèi liǎngběn hěn guì, kěshi nèiběn gèng guì.	These two books are very expensive, but that one is even more expensive.
Dìyīběn bǐ dìèrběn guì, kěshi dìsānběn zuì guì.	The first book is more expensive than that one, but the third one is the most expensive.

If the entire sentence involves a comparison of the three books, the speaker may single out the most expensive book with zuì, or sometimes without it.

Zhèi sānběn shū, něiběn guì?	Of these three books, which is the (most) expensive one?
Zhèiběn zuì guì.	This one is the most expensive.

4. A: Nà bù hǎo yìsi!	I can't let you do that! (That would be too embarrassing!)
B: Bié kèqi, méi shenme. Nèige dìfangde cài yòu hǎo yòu piányi.	Don't be polite. It's nothing. The food there is both good and cheap.

Notes on No. 4

Bù hǎo yìsi is an idiomatic phrase meaning "to be embarrassing." In Chinese culture, treating someone to a meal both shows your respect for him and maintains your status as a generous host. In exchange 4, Nà bù hǎo yìsi means "I'm embarrassed to have you show me so much respect," or "I'm embarrassed to appear to be too cheap to treat you." Bù hǎo yìsi also means "to feel embarrassed."

Yòu...yòu..., "both...and...": The element following each yòu may be as simple as an adjectival verb or as complex as a full verb phrase.

Tā háizi yòu huì shuō Yīngwén, His child can speak both English and  
yòu huì shuō Zhōngguó huà. Chinese.

(LESS) ...méiyóu...nàme (STATE VERB)

(EQUAL) ...gēn...yíyang (STATE VERB)

A simple adjectival verb may also be used to make a comparison:

Zhèi liǎngběn, nǐběn guì? Which of these two books is more expensive?

For each of the three patterns above (MORE--LESS--EQUAL), the comparison is made with a STATE verb. State verbs include adjectival verbs (hǎo, "to be good"), auxiliary verbs (huì, "to know how to," "can"), and verbs describing mental attitudes or situations (zhīdao, "to know"; xǐhuan, "to like"; ài, "to love").

Tā bǐ wǒ ài chī Zhōngguó fàn. He loves to eat Chinese food more than I.

Zhèijiàn shìqing, nǐ bǐ tā zhīdao. You know more about this than he does.

Tā méiyóu wǒ zhème xǐhuan kàn diànyǐng. He doesn't like to see movies as much as I do.

Although the verb phrase begins with a state verb, that may not be the only word in the comparison. It may be expanded to include other verbs (any type) and objects.

The things being compared may also be expanded. Whole sentences may be placed in the slots for things compared:

Zuò huǒchē méiyóu zuò fēijī Going by train is not as fast as going by plane.  
nàme kuài.

Wǒ xué Zhōngwén bǐ tā xué It's easier for him, studying history,  
lìshǐ róngyi. than it is for me, studying Chinese.

Although the prepositional verb bǐ is used to say that one thing is "more" than another, do not use the negative of this pattern to say that something is "less."

Tā bǐ tā gēge néng shuō huà. He is a better talker (smoother talker) than his older brother.

This pattern may also be expanded to indicate just HOW MUCH more one thing is than another. (Place the amount after the verb in a sentence.)

Zhèiběn bǐ nèiběn guì sānkuài This book is three dollars more expensive than that one.  
qián.

Wǒ bǐ tā dà liǎngsuì. I am two years older than she is.

Another way to indicate how much more is to add -de duō, "a lot," to an adjectival verb.

Zhèige bǐ nèige hǎokànde duō! This is much better looking than that!

Suǐrán...kěshi...: Suǐrán (or suǐrán), "although," must always be followed by kěshi or dànshi, meaning "but," in the second part of a sentence. Kěshi/dànshi would not usually be translated into English, but sometimes the word "still" is included in the translation: "Although it's not too good, still it's close to us." Suǐrán may either precede the subject or be placed between the subject and the verb of a sentence.

Suǐrán tā xǐhuan lǚxíng, kěshi tā méi qùguo Zhōngguó.	Although she likes to travel, she has never been to China.
Tā suǐrán jiǎngle hǎojǐcì, kěshi wǒ háishi bù dǒng.	Although he explained it many times, I still didn't understand.
Wǒ suǐrán méi kànjianguo, kěshi tīng rén shuōguo.	Although I have never seen it, I have heard of it.

- |                                                                     |                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 3. B: Òu, hái yǒu yíge xīn kāide fànguǎnzi lí wǒmen zhèli gèng jìn. | Oh, there is also a newly opened restaurant that is even closer to us. |
| B: Tāmen nàlide cài fēicháng hǎo.                                   | The food there is exceptionally good.                                  |
| B: Jīntiān wǒ qǐng ni dào nàli qù chī.                              | Today I am going to invite you to go there to eat.                     |

Notes on No. 3

Xīn kāide: The adjectival verb xīn, "new," means "newly," "recently" when used as an adverb.

Gèng, "more," "even more," "still more"

Zài lǐngshiguǎn gōngzuòde rén bǐ dàshiguǎn gèng duō.	More people work at the consulates than at the embassy.
Lǜ píngguǒ hěn guì, hóng píngguǒ gèng guì.	Green apples are expensive; red apples are even more expensive.
Zhāng Tíngfēng shuōde Zhōngguo huà, Zhōngguo rén hěn nán tīngdedǒng, wàiguó rén yídìng gèng nán.	Zhāng Tíng Fēng's Chinese is hard for Chinese people to understand; for a foreigner, it would certainly be even harder.

An overview of comparison: You have now learned several ways to compare things. The patterns presented here are the most common ones. Each pattern has a standard purpose:

(MORE)

...bǐ...

(STATE VERB)

REFERENCE NOTES

1. B: Jīntiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?  
 A: Hǎo a, dào Dōngmén Cāntīng qù chī ba.
- Let's go have lunch together today. Okay?  
 All right. Why don't we go to the East Gate Restaurant?

Note on No. 1

Zhōngfàn means, literally, "middle meal." "Breakfast" is zǎofàn, "early meal." "Supper" is wǎnfàn, "late meal."

2. B: Dōngménde cài kǒngpà méiyǒu Dàhuáde cài nàme hǎo ba.  
 A: Suǐrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen zhèli jìn.
- I'm afraid that the food at the East Gate isn't as good as the food at the Great China.  
 Even though it [East Gate] is not too good, it is close to us.

Notes on No. 2

Cài, "(nonstaple) food," "dish," "course (of a meal)": Literally, cài means "vegetables." It refers to any dish that is eaten with rice. Both meat and vegetable dishes are included in the meaning.

The pattern ...(méi)you...nàme... is used to make comparisons when one thing is LESS than another.

1 + méiyǒu + 2 + nàme/zhème + STATE VERB (OFTEN ADJECTIVAL VERB)

Tā	méiyǒu	nǐ	nàme	máng.
Wǒ	méiyǒu	tā	nàme	cōngming.
Tā	méiyǒu	wǒ	nàme	yǒu qián.

Used less frequently without the negative méi-, the pattern means "to be as [quality] AS [something else]."

Nǐde shū méiyǒu wǒde shū nàme duō.  
 Yǒu.

Your books are not as many as mine. (You don't have as many books as I do.)  
 Yes, they are. (Yes, I do have as many books as you do.)

Nèige xuéxiào de túshūguǎn yǒu zhèige xuéxiào de zhème hǎo ma?  
 ma?

Is that school's library as good as this one's?

lǎoshi	always, all the time
lián...(yě)	even...(also)
Shísānlíng	Ming Tombs (literally, "Thirteen Tombs")
yěcān	picnic
yǒu míng	to be famous
Yúyuán	Szechuan Garden
zhāodài	to be hospitable to

VOCABULARY

biéde	other, different
bù hǎo yìsi	to be embarrassing; to feel embarrassed
bù yídìng	not necessarily; it's not definite
cài	food, cooked dish
cāntīng	dining room; restaurant
chībuzhǎo	can't find (to eat)
Dàhuá Cāntīng	Great China Restaurant
Dōngmén Cāntīng	East Gate Restaurant
fēicháng	very, extremely, highly
gèng	even more
hǎoxiē	a good many, a lot
kānfǎ	opinion, view
méiyǒu...nàme/zhème	is not as...as...
suīrán(suīrán)...kěshi...	although, even though...(still)...
wǎnfàn	supper, dinner
xiǎngfǎ	idea, opinion
yídìng	certainly
yìxiē	some, several, a few
yǒu...yǒu...	both...and...
zǎofàn	breakfast
zhōngfàn	lunch
zuǒfǎ	way of doing things, method, practice

(introduced on C-2 tape)

ānpaihǎo le	successfully arranged
-bù	(counter for cars and buses)
chūfā	to start a journey
jiāoqū	suburbs

- |            |                                       |
|------------|---------------------------------------|
| 8. wǎnfàn  | supper, dinner                        |
| 9. xiǎngfa | idea, opinion                         |
| 10. yìxiē  | some, several, a few                  |
| 11. zǎofàn | breakfast                             |
| 12. zuòfa  | way of doing things, method, practice |



Modern apartments in Shànghǎi

UNIT 6

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

- |                                                                     |                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. B: Jīntiān wǒmen yìqǐ qù chī zhōngfàn, hǎo ma?                   | Let's go have lunch together today. Okay?                                               |
| A: Hǎo a, dào Dōngmén Cāntīng qù chī ba.                            | All right. Why don't we go to the East Gate Restaurant?                                 |
| 2. B: Dōngmén de cài kǒngpà méiyǒu Dàhuá de cài nàme hǎo ba.        | I'm afraid that the food at the East Gate isn't as good as the food at the Great China. |
| A: Suǐrán bú tài hǎo, kěshi lí wǒmen zhèli jìn.                     | Even though it [East Gate] is not too good, it is close to us.                          |
| 3. B: Òu, hái yǒu yíge xīn kāide fānguǎnzi lí wǒmen zhèli gèng jìn. | Oh, there is also a newly opened restaurant that is even closer to us.                  |
| B: Tāmen nàlǐ de cài fēicháng hǎo.                                  | The food there is extremely good.                                                       |
| B: Jīntiān wǒ qǐng ni dào nàli qù chī.                              | Today I am going to invite you to go there to eat.                                      |
| 4. A: Nà bù hǎo yìsi!                                               | I can't let you do that!<br>(That would be too embarrassing!)                           |
| B: Bié kèqi, méi shenme. Nèige dìfāng de cài yòu hǎo yòu piányi.    | Don't be polite. It's nothing. The food there is both good and cheap.                   |
| 5. A: Nǐ shuō de dìfāng yíding hǎo.                                 | Any place you suggest is sure to be good.                                               |
| B: Tāmen nàli yǒu hǎoxiē cài bié de dìfāng chībuzhào.               | They have a good many dishes there that you can't find (at) other places.               |

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |              |                                    |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| 6. bù yíding | not necessarily; it's not definite |
| 7. kànfa     | opinion, view                      |



G. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                                                         |                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Xiàwǔ sān-sìdiǎn<br/>zěnmeyàng?<br/>(cue) tā<br/>(How is [How about]<br/>three or four in the<br/>afternoon?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Tā zěnmeyàng?<br/>(How is he? [How about him?])</p> |
| <p>2. Tā zěnmeyàng? Táiwān</p>                                                                                                          | <p>Táiwān zěnmeyàng?</p>                                           |
| <p>3. Táiwān zěnmeyàng?<br/>Táiwānde jīngji</p>                                                                                         | <p>Táiwānde jīngji zěnmeyàng?</p>                                  |
| <p>4. Táiwānde jīngji zěnmeyàng?<br/>nèige fàndiàn</p>                                                                                  | <p>Nèige fàndiàn zěnmeyàng?</p>                                    |
| <p>5. Nèige fàndiàn zěnmeyàng?<br/>zhèige xuéxiào</p>                                                                                   | <p>Zhèige xuéxiào zěnmeyàng?</p>                                   |
| <p>6. Zhèige xuéxiào zěnmeyàng?<br/>tāmen màide diànshì</p>                                                                             | <p>Tāmen màide diànshì zěnmeyàng?</p>                              |
| <p>7. Tāmen màide diànshì zěnmeyàng?</p>                                                                                                |                                                                    |

H. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                       |                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Tāmen míngtiān kāi huì.<br/>(cue) when<br/>(They are meeting<br/>tomorrow.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Tāmen míngtiān shénme shíhou<br/>kāi huì?<br/>(When are they meeting<br/>tomorrow?)</p> |
| <p>2. Tāmen míngtiān kāi huì.<br/>where</p>                                                           | <p>Tāmen míngtiān zài nǎr kāi huì?</p>                                                                 |
| <p>3. Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì le.<br/>when</p>                                                          | <p>Tāmen zuótiān shì shénme shíhou<br/>kāide huì?</p>                                                  |
| <p>4. Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì le.<br/>where</p>                                                         | <p>Tāmen zuótiān shì zài nǎr kāide huì?</p>                                                            |
| <p>5. Tāmen míngtiān kāi huì.<br/>how many hours</p>                                                  | <p>Tāmen míngtiān kāi huì kāi jǐge<br/>zhōngtóu?</p>                                                   |
| <p>6. Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì le.<br/>how long</p>                                                      | <p>Tāmen zuótiān kāi huì kāile duō jiǔ?</p>                                                            |
| <p>7. Tāmen yǐjīng kāi huì le ma?<br/>yes</p>                                                         | <p>Tāmen yǐjīng kāi huì le.</p>                                                                        |

F. Substitution Drill

You will need the word zhǔrèn, "director," in this exercise.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒmen yǒu yàojǐnde shì, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.<br/>(cue) Lín Zhǔrèn bù néng lái.<br/>(Because we have some important business in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Yīnwei shàngwǔ Lín Zhǔrèn bù néng lái, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.<br/>(Because Director Lín cannot come in the morning, we will have to change to the afternoon.)</p> |
| <p>2. Yīnwei shàngwǔ Lín Zhǔrèn bù néng lái, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le. tā zài Wàijiāobù kāi huì</p>                                                                                                                                 | <p>Yīnwei shàngwǔ tā zài Wàijiāobù kāi huì, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.</p>                                                                                                           |
| <p>3. Yīnwei shàngwǔ tā zài Wàijiāobù kāi huì, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le. wǒ děi jiāo shū</p>                                                                                                                                        | <p>Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi jiāo shū, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.</p>                                                                                                                    |
| <p>4. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi jiāo shū, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le. wǒ děi dào Dàshiguǎn qù</p>                                                                                                                                         | <p>Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi dào Dàshiguǎn qù, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.</p>                                                                                                            |
| <p>5. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi dào Dàshiguǎn qù, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le. wǒ děi gēn Wǔ Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tántan</p>                                                                                                                 | <p>Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi gēn Wǔ Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tántan, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.</p>                                                                                            |
| <p>6. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ děi gēn Wǔ Xiānsheng dāngmiàn tántan, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le. wǒ méi gōngfu</p>                                                                                                                           | <p>Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ méi gōngfu, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.</p>                                                                                                                      |
| <p>7. Yīnwei shàngwǔ wǒ méi gōngfu, suǒyì gǎidào xiàwǔ le.</p>                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                  |

D. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                     |                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ xiěxiàláí le ma?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) not yet<br>(Have you written it<br>down?) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ hái méi xiěxiàláí.<br>(I haven't written it down<br>yet.) |
| 2. Nǐ xiěhǎo le ma?            soon will                                                            | Wǒ kuài xiěhǎo le.                                                        |
| 3. Nǐ xiěxiàláí le ma?            already                                                           | Wǒ yǐjīng xiěxiàláí le.                                                   |
| 4. Nǐ xiěxiàláí le ma?            not yet                                                           | Wǒ hái méi xiěxiàláí.                                                     |
| 5. Nǐ xiěxiàláí le ma?            did not                                                           | Wǒ méi xiěxiàláí.                                                         |
| 6. Nǐ xiěhǎo le ma?            already                                                              | Wǒ yǐjīng xiěhǎo le.                                                      |
| 7. Nǐ xiěxiàláí le ma? Yes, I did                                                                   | Wǒ xiěxiàláí le.                                                          |

E. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ gēn tā yuēhǎo le ma?<br>( <u>cue</u> ) tā bàngōngshì<br>(Did you make arrange-<br>ments with him?) | <u>You</u> : Gēn tā yuēhǎo le, zài tā<br>bàngōngshì jiàn.<br>(I made arrangements with him<br>to meet at his office.) |
| 2. Nǐ gēn Wáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le<br>ma?    huǒchēzhàn                                                                   | Gēn Wáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le, zài<br>huǒchēzhàn jiàn.                                                                 |
| 3. Nǐ gēn Lí Nǚshì yuēhǎo le ma?<br>wǒde bàngōngshì                                                                       | Gēn Lí Nǚshì yuēhǎo le, zài wǒde<br>bàngōngshì jiàn.                                                                  |
| 4. Nǐ gēn Liú Zhūrèn yuēhǎo le ma?<br>Wàijiāobù                                                                           | Gēn Liú Zhūrèn yuēhǎo le, zài<br>Wàijiāobù jiàn.                                                                      |
| 5. Nǐ gēn Bāo Jiàoshòu yuēhǎo le<br>ma?    xuéxiào                                                                        | Gēn Bāo Jiàoshòu yuēhǎo le, zài<br>xuéxiào jiàn.                                                                      |
| 6. Nǐ gēn Bái Kēzhǎng yuēhǎo le<br>ma?    tāde bàngōngshì                                                                 | Gēn Bái Kēzhǎng yuēhǎo le, zài<br>tāde bàngōngshì jiàn.                                                               |
| 7. Nǐ gēn Yáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le<br>ma?    huìkèshì                                                                     | Gēn Yáng Xiānsheng yuēhǎo le, zài<br>huìkèshì jiàn.                                                                   |

5. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkan tā zǒule  
meiyǒu.

6. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkan tā huílaile  
meiyǒu.

7. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkan tā huíqǔle  
meiyǒu.

Qǐng nǐ dēngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkan  
tā zǒule meiyǒu.

Qǐng nǐ dēngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkan  
tā huílaile meiyǒu.

Qǐng nǐ dēngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkan  
tā huíqǔle meiyǒu.

C. Substitution Drill

1. Speaker: Lǎojià, bǎ nín de diàn-  
huà hào mǎr gào sòng  
wǒ.  
(cue) Wáng Xiānsheng-  
de diàn huà hào mǎr  
(Please tell me his  
telephone number.)

2. Lǎojià, bǎ Wáng Xiānsheng de  
diàn huà hào mǎr gào sòng wǒ.  
tā de diàn huà hào mǎr

3. Lǎojià, bǎ tā de diàn huà hào mǎr  
gào sòng wǒ. tā de dì zhǐ

4. Lǎojià, bǎ tā de dì zhǐ gào sòng  
wǒ. tā de bàngōngshì de  
hào mǎr

5. Lǎojià, bǎ tā de bàngōngshì de  
hào mǎr gào sòng wǒ.  
tā de dì zhǐ

6. Lǎojià, bǎ tā de dì zhǐ gào sòng  
wǒ. nín de diàn huà hào mǎr

7. Lǎojià, bǎ nín de diàn huà hào mǎr  
gào sòng wǒ.

You: Lǎojià, bǎ Wáng Xiānsheng de  
diàn huà hào mǎr gào sòng wǒ.  
(Please tell me Mr. Wáng's  
telephone number.)

Lǎojià, bǎ tā de diàn huà hào mǎr  
gào sòng wǒ.

Lǎojià, bǎ tā de dì zhǐ gào sòng wǒ.

Lǎojià, bǎ tā de bàngōngshì de hào mǎr  
gào sòng wǒ.

Lǎojià, bǎ tā de dì zhǐ gào sòng wǒ.

Lǎojià, bǎ nín de diàn huà hào mǎr  
gào sòng wǒ.

DRILLS

A. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wài, shì Wàijiāobù ma?<br/>(cue) Lín Sīzhǎng<br/>(Hello, is this the<br/>Ministry of Foreign<br/>Affairs?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Wài, shì Wàijiāobù ma? Wǒ yào<br/>zhǎo Lín Sīzhǎng shuō huà.<br/>(Hello, is this the Ministry<br/>of Foreign Affairs? I want<br/>to speak with Department<br/>Chief Lín.)</p> |
| <p>2. Wài, shì Měiguó Wǔguānchù ma?<br/>Wèi Shàoxiào</p>                                                                             | <p>Wài, shì Měiguó Wǔguānchù ma? Wǒ<br/>yào zhǎo Wèi Shàoxiào shuō huà.</p>                                                                                                                  |
| <p>3. Wài, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma?<br/>Lín Kēzhǎng</p>                                                                              | <p>Wài, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma? Wǒ<br/>yào zhǎo Lín Kēzhǎng shuō huà.</p>                                                                                                                   |
| <p>4. Wài, shì Běijīng Fàndiàn ma?<br/>Bāoěr Xiānsheng</p>                                                                           | <p>Wài, shì Běijīng Fàndiàn ma? Wǒ<br/>yào zhǎo Bāoěr Xiānsheng shuō huà.</p>                                                                                                                |
| <p>5. Wài, shì Jiānádà Dàshiguǎn ma?<br/>Lǐ Xiānsheng</p>                                                                            | <p>Wài, shì Jiānádà Dàshiguǎn ma? Wǒ<br/>yào zhǎo Lǐ Xiānsheng shuō huà.</p>                                                                                                                 |
| <p>6. Wài, shì Měidàsī ma?<br/>Mèng Tóngzhì</p>                                                                                      | <p>Wài, shì Měidàsī ma? Wǒ yào zhǎo<br/>Mèng Tóngzhì shuō huà.</p>                                                                                                                           |
| <p>7. Wài, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma?<br/>Zhāngnán Tóngzhì</p>                                                                         | <p>Wài, shì Zhōngguó Yínháng ma? Wǒ<br/>yào zhǎo Zhāngnán Tóngzhì shuō<br/>huà.</p>                                                                                                          |

B. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā<br/>zài bu zai.<br/>(I'll see whether he<br/>is here or not.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Qǐng nǐ dēngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ<br/>kànkàn tā zài bu zai.<br/>(Please wait a moment. I'll<br/>see whether he is here or<br/>not.)</p> |
| <p>2. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā máng bu<br/>mang.</p>                                                             | <p>Qǐng nǐ dēngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn<br/>tā máng bu mang.</p>                                                                                   |
| <p>3. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā yǒu gōngfu<br/>meiyou.</p>                                                        | <p>Qǐng nǐ dēngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn<br/>tā yǒu gōngfu meiyou.</p>                                                                              |
| <p>4. Wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn tā lái le<br/>meiyou.</p>                                                            | <p>Qǐng nǐ dēngyíděng, wǒ gěi nǐ kànkàn<br/>tā lái le meiyou.</p>                                                                                  |

Wǒ hái shì bù dǒng "le" zěnme yòng. I still don't understand how le is used.

Wàiguo rén, "foreigner": The use of this term is still generally based on race rather than on citizenship. Even Chinese who are American citizens living in the United States often refer to non-Chinese Americans as wàiguo rén.

Wūzi, "room": The counter for wūzi is -jiān, which literally means "interstice," "interval," "space," "room."

Notes on No. 6

Yào means "to be urgent," "to be important."

Yīnwei...suóyī: When the first part of an English sentence begins with the word "because," it is usually considered redundant to begin the second part with "therefore." Thus the Chinese word suóyī, "therefore," in the first sentence of exchange 6, is not translated into English. In Chinese, however, suóyī is commonly used after a clause beginning with yīnwei, "because."

The verbs gǎi and huàn are both frequently translated as "to change." Gǎi means "change" in the sense of "alter," and huàn means "change" in the sense of "exchange."

Gǎi dào xiàwǔ, "change (it) to the afternoon": In this phrase, the prepositional verb dào and its object xiàwǔ do not precede the verb; they follow the verb. A dào, "to," phrase which precedes the main verb in a sentence can be a scene setter, that is, you go "to" a place and the action takes place there. Following the main verb in a sentence, a dào phrase can indicate where something ends up as a result of the action. In the first sentence of exchange 6, the appointment will END UP in the afternoon. Here are some examples of dào phrases:

Tā dào cǎishìchǎng mǎi cài  
qu le.

He went to the market to buy  
groceries. (SCENE SETTER)

Wǒ gāngcái dào wǔlóu zhǎo  
Chén Tàitai qu le.

Just now I went to the fifth floor  
to look for Mrs. Chén. (SCENE  
SETTER)

Tā pǎo dào shānshang qu le.

He ran to the top of the mountain.  
("He" ENDS UP ON THE MOUNTAINTOP.)

- |                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| 7. háishi         | still                         |
| 8. wàiguo         | foreign, abroad               |
| 9. wàiguo rén     | foreigner (non-Chinese)       |
| 10. wūzi (yìjiān) | room                          |
| 11. yào           | one (telephone pronunciation) |

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Háishi means "still" in the sense of "as before." It is used in some of the same ways that hái is used.

Suīrán tā yǒu shíhou shuō  
huà bú kěqi, kěshi wǒ  
háishi xǐhuan ta.

Although he is sometimes impolite in  
his speech, I still like him.

Notes on No. 5

Gāngcái means "just now," "a short time ago." It may, like other time words, either precede or follow the subject of a sentence.

Tā gāngcái gěi wo dǎ diànhuà      He called me a short time ago.  
le.

Gāngcái tā gěi wo dǎ diànhuà  
le.

The one-syllable adverb gāng, "just," always follows the subject of a sentence.

Tā gāng gěi wo dǎ diànhuà.      He just called me.

Nǐ gāngcái gěi wo dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài, literally, "You called me just now, I wasn't in": To the first clause (Nǐ gāngcái gěi wo dǎ diànhuà), you could add -de shíhou, "when." Even without -de shíhou, the relationship between the two clauses is still very close. Colloquially, no pause is needed between them. Here is a similar sentence:

Gāngcái wǒ qù zhǎo ni, nǐ      I just went to look for you, but you  
bú zài.      weren't there.

Nèitiān literally means "that day." It is the Chinese equivalent of "the other day."

Yuēhǎo is a compound verb of result: yuē, "to arrange a meeting," "to make an appointment," plus hǎo, "successfully complete."

Gēn means "with" in the last sentence of exchange 5.

Bàngōngshì: Bàngōng (literally, "manage work") is frequently used for "do work in an office." A bàngōngshì is a room where office work is done, or an "office."

6. A: Yīnwei míngtiān zǎoshang wǒ yǒu yíjiàn yàojǐnde shì, suóyì xiǎng wèn nín wǒmen néng bu néng gǎi dào xiàwǔ.  
C: Xiàwǔ shénme shíhou?  
A: Nín kàn xiàwǔ sān-sìdiǎn zěnmeyàng? Duì nín fāngbian bu fāngbian?  
C: Sìdiǎn bǐ sāndiǎn hǎo. Wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng děi kāi huì.  
A: Hǎo ba. Nà míngtiān sìdiǎn zhōng jiàn.  
C: Hǎo, wǒ sìdiǎn zhōng děng ni.
- Because I have an urgent business matter tomorrow morning, I want to ask you whether we can change it [the appointment] to the afternoon. What time in the afternoon? What do you think of three or four in the afternoon? Is that convenient for you? Four would be better than three. I have to attend a meeting at three o'clock.  
All right. Well then, see you at four o'clock tomorrow.  
All right. I'll wait for you at four o'clock.



c. When can't bǎ be used?

Bǎ cannot normally be used in a sentence if the verb is not an action verb, if the verb describes perception (like kànjian and tīngjian), if the object is not the undergoer of the action, if the object is indefinite, or if the verb is a simple verb. Here are some examples of sentences in which bǎ cannot be used:

- |                                |                                                                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Wǒ mǎile yíge shōuyīnjī.       | I bought a radio.<br>(INDEFINITE OBJECT)                                           |
| Wǒ kànjian ta le.              | I saw him.<br>(PERCEPTION VERB [ <u>kànjian</u> ]; OBJECT DOES NOT UNDERGO ACTION) |
| Wǒ xiǎng kàn zhèiběn shū.      | I would like to read this book.<br>(SIMPLE VERB)                                   |
| Wǒ yǒu hěn duō wàiguó péngyou. | I have a lot of foreign friends.<br>( <u>yǒu</u> NOT ACTION VERB)                  |
| Wǒ zhīdao zhèijiàn shì.        | I know of this matter.<br>( <u>zhīdao</u> NOT ACTION VERB)                         |

d. What is the motivation for using bǎ?

Bǎ is used when the verb phrase gives more new important information than the object does. The Chinese prefer to place that important verb phrase in final position in a sentence, where the phrase will be prominent. Bǎ performs the function of taking the object out of the way (to the beginning of a sentence) and allowing the verb phrase to have its full impact.

e. To make a bǎ sentence negative, place the negative adverb in front of bǎ (NOT in front of the main verb).

- |                                                |                                                                                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tā méi bǎ zhuōzi bānchūqu.                     | He did not move the table out.                                                                                        |
| Nǐ bù bǎ ròu* fàng zai bīngxiāngli zěnme xíng? | How can it do for you not to put the meat in the refrigerator?<br>(How can you not put the meat in the refrigerator?) |

- |                                                                                       |                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. C: Duìbuqǐ, nǐ gāngcái gěi wo dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài.                               | I'm sorry. When you called me just now, I wasn't in.                                                                |
| C: Nǐ yǒu shì ma?                                                                     | Can I help you with something?                                                                                      |
| A: Shì a! Wǒ nèitiān gēn nín yuēhǎole míngtiān shídiǎn dào nín bàngōngshì qu tán-tán. | Yes, you can. The other day I made an appointment with you to go to your office at ten o'clock tomorrow for a talk. |

---

\*ròu, "meat"

Tā bǎ liǎngzhāng piào gěi wǒ le. He gave me the two tickets. (NOT "[any] two tickets")

(4) The verb phrase must be complex. Here are examples of the ways in which a verb phrase can be made complex so that bǎ may be used:

(ASPECT MARKER)

Tā bǎ tāde chēzi mài le. He sold his car.

(REDUPLICATED VERB)

Qǐng nǐ bǎ piào huànhuan. Please exchange the tickets.

(COMPOUND VERB)

Tā bǎ wǒde dìzhǐ xiěxia-lai le. He wrote down my address.

Nǐ bǎ xíngli náshang chē qu ba. Take the baggage onto the train.

Wǒmen zuótiān yǐjīng bǎ zhèijiàn shì shuōhǎo le. We agreed on this matter yesterday.

Wǒ xiān bǎ zhèige xiěwán zài zǒu. I will finish writing this first and then leave.

Nǐ bǎ wǒde míngzi xiěcuò le. You wrote my name wrong.

(MANNER EXPRESSION AFTER THE VERB)

Nǐ bǎ zhèige zì xiědà tài dà le. You wrote this character too large.

Tā bǎ zhèijiàn shì shuōde hěn qīngchu. He talked very clearly about this.

(PREPOSITIONAL VERB PHRASE AFTER THE VERB)

Bǎ píjiǔ fàng zai zhuōzi-shang. Put the beer on the table.

Wǒ bǎ chē tíng zai nàibian děng nín. I will park the car over there and wait for you.

(INDIRECT OBJECT AFTER THE VERB)

Lǐ Xiānsheng bǎ zìdiǎn gěi xuésheng le. Mr. Lǐ has given the dictionaries to the students.

(NUMBER PLUS COUNTER AFTER THE VERB)

Qǐng nǐ zài bǎ tāde diàn-huà hàomǎr niàn yícì. Please read his telephone number aloud once more.

Qǐng nǐ bǎ zhèige kǎn yíxia. Please take a look at this. (OR "Please read this over.")

In the first sentence of exchange 4, the verb phrase is made complex by having an indirect object after the verb: bǎ nín de diàn huà hàomǎr gào sòng wǒ

b. When MUST bǎ be used?

The examples above which require the use of bǎ are those with a prepositional verb phrase after the verb, those with a manner expression after the verb, and most of the sentences under the heading "Compound Verb." In these examples, the object may not be placed between the verb and the element which follows.

Yāo is used in Běijīng for giving room numbers and telephone numbers whenever those numbers are given orally.

Xiěxialai is a compound verb which is formed like náxialai. However, while náxialai literally means "to bring down and towards the speaker," xiěxialai does NOT mean "to write in a downward direction towards the speaker." The compound xiěxialai corresponds to the English idiom "to write down."

Qǐng nín bǎ nín de diànhuà hào mǎr gào sòng wǒ illustrates some of the rules concerning the use of the prepositional verb bǎ. (Read the Transportation Module notes on bǎ.)

Bǎ is a prepositional verb used to bring the direct object of a sentence to a position preceding the main verb. To do so has certain effects on the meaning of a sentence. There are reasons why bǎ must be used, why it may not be used, and why it is optional in different kinds of sentences.

In the first sentence of exchange 4, the use of the bǎ construction is optional. You may also say Qǐng nǐ gào sòng wǒ nín de diànhuà hào mǎr. The sentence fulfills the requirements for the optional use of bǎ but has none of the features which make the use of bǎ a necessity. Let's look more closely at these different requirements and features.

a. What conditions are necessary for the use of bǎ?

(1) The object of bǎ must be acted on. In other words, the action must be performed on the object of bǎ. In the first sentence of exchange 4, nín de diànhuà hào mǎr undergoes the action gào sòng. More obvious examples are

Tā bǎ dìtú náchulai le.	He took out the map. (MAP UNDERGOES BEING TAKEN OUT)
Tā bǎ tāde chē mài le.	He sold his car. (CAR UNDERGOES BEING SOLD)
Tā bǎ nèige Zhōngguó zì xiě zai hēibǎnshang le.	He wrote that Chinese character on the chalkboard. (CHINESE CHARACTER UNDERGOES BEING WRITTEN ON THE BOARD)

UNDERGOER OF THE ACTION means that the object is influenced by the action in some way. In "I saw Mr. Wáng yesterday," Mr. Wáng is not considered to be the undergoer of the action.

(2) The verb must be an action verb (such as gào sòng in exchange 4). Bǎ is not used with state and process verbs. For example, you may not use bǎ with yǒu, zhīdao, xǐhuan, ài, xiǎng, huì, or dǒng.

(3) The object of bǎ must refer to something specific (such as nín de diànhuà hào mǎr in exchange 4): which telephone number? your telephone number (The questioner knows which number he is referring to, even though he does not know what the number is.) Often the object of bǎ must be translated into English with the definite article "the":

Qǐng nǐ bǎ huāpíng gěi wǒ. Please give me the vase. (NOT "a vase")

may also say Nǐ nǎr a? To ask for the caller's name, use Qǐngwèn nǐ shi...? or Qǐngwèn nǐ guīxìng?

Fǎguo: In the PRC, the word for "France" usually has a low tone instead of a falling tone (Fàguo).

The syllable -guān means "government official," "officer," or "office-holder."

Tā zài bu zài: Zài means "to be present" here. With this meaning, zài does not have to be followed by a place word.

3. B: Wèi, tā zhèihuǐr bú zài. Hello. He is not here at the moment.  
    Nǐn yào liú ge huàr ma? Would you like to leave a message?  
A: Láojià, tā huílai de shíhou, When he comes back, please ask him  
    nǐn qǐng ta gěi wo dǎ ge to give me a phone call.  
    diànhuà.

#### Notes on No. 3

Zhèihuǐr is a colloquial word for "now," "at the moment." The word is made up of zhè plus yìhuǐr. Its position preceding the verb shows that it refers to a point in time.

Liú ge huàr: Liú means "to leave [something/someone] behind." Huàr, translated in exchange 3 as "message," is the word for "speech." Directly following a verb (in this case, liú), the yī of unstressed yige may be omitted.

4. B: Hǎo, qǐng nǐn bǎ nǐnde diàn- All right. Please tell me your  
    huà hào mǎr gāosong wǒ. Wǒ phone number. I'll write it down.  
    xiěxiàlái.  
A: Wǒde diànhuà shì wǒ èr yāo- My phone number is 521-331.  
    sān sān yāo.

#### Notes on No. 4

Hào mǎr is used for "number" in speaking of identification numbers such as a passport number. (Shùmu, "number," expresses an amount.)

REFERENCE NOTES

- |                                      |                                                 |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 1. B: Wài.                           | Hello.                                          |
| A: Wèi, shì Wàijiāobù ma?            | Hello. Is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs? |
| A: Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sìzhǎng shuō huà. | I want to speak with Department Chief Lín.      |

Notes on No. 1

Wàijiāobù: Wàijiāo is the word for "diplomacy" (more literally, "foreign relations"). Bù designates an organizational unit; in speaking of the Chinese government, bù is translated as "ministry."\* The head of a bù is a bùzhǎng, "minister."

Wài-, "foreign," is used in terms such as wàiguó, "overseas" (literally, "foreign country") and wàiguó rén, "foreigner" (most frequently referring to a person from a non-Asian country). Literally, wài- means "outside," as in wàimian.

Yào zhǎo...shuō huà means, literally, "I would like to look for . . . to speak [with him]."

Telephone conversations: Telephone courtesy in the United States requires that a person identify himself before beginning a conversation. In China, however, it is normal for the caller to ask "Who is this?" and for the person who answers the phone to inquire "Who is calling?"

- |                                                                    |                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2. B: Nín shì nǎr a?                                               | Who is this?                                                                        |
| A: Wǒ xìng Lèkēláier. Wǒ shì Fǎguó Dàshìguǎnde Shāngwù Jīngjiguān. | My name is Leclaire. I am the Commercial/Economics Officer from the French Embassy. |
| B: Nín děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nín kànkan tā zài bu zai.                | Wait a moment. I'll see whether he is here or not.                                  |

Notes on No. 2

Nín shì nǎr a? is one polite way to ask who is calling. Nǎr asks for the name of the office or organization which the caller represents. You

---

\*Bù is also used for a "department" of the U.S. government: Nèizhèngbù, "Department of the Interior"

jīnglǐ	manager
qīnzì	personally, privately
tuánzhǎng	head of the delegation
zhǔrèn	director
zìjǐ	oneself ("myself," "yourself," etc.)

(introduced in Communication Game)

chēfāng	garage
dì	ground, earth



Street scene in Shànghǎi

VOCABULARY

bǎ	(prepositional verb which indicates the direct object)
bàngōngshì	office
gǎi	to change
gǎi dào	to change to
gāngcái	just now, a short time ago
háishi	still
hàomǎ(r)	number
jīngjìguān	economics officer
liú	to leave, to keep, to save
liú(ge)huà(r)	to leave a message
nèitiān	the other day
shāngwù	commercial business
shāngwùguān	commercial officer
wàiguó	foreign, abroad
wàiguó rén	foreigner (non-Chinese)
Wàijiāobù	Ministry of Foreign Affairs
wūzi (yìjiān)	room
xiěxiàláí	to write down
yāo	one (telephone pronunciation)
yàoǐn	to be important, to be urgent
yuēhǎole	to have (successfully) made arrangements, to have made an appointment
zhèihuǐr	this moment, at the moment (Běijīng)

(introduced on C-2 and drill tapes)

chūtǔ wénwù zhǎnlǎn	exhibition of archaeological finds
dǎ dao	to make a phone call to
dàibǐǎotuán	delegation
gǎnbuhuíláí	can't make it back in time
jiàoyuán	teacher

- \*C: Xiàwǔ shénme shíhou?  
A: Nín kàn xiàwǔ sān-sìdiǎn zěnmeyàng? Duì nín fāngbian bu fāngbian?  
C: Sìdiǎn bǐ sāndiǎn hǎo. Wǒ sāndiǎn zhōng děi kāi huì.  
A: Hǎo ba. Nà míngtiān sìdiǎn zhōng jiàn.  
C: Hǎo, wǒ sìdiǎn zhōng děng ni.

- What time in the afternoon?  
What do you think of three or four in the afternoon? Is that convenient for you?  
Four would be better than three. I have to attend a meeting at three o'clock.  
All right. Well then, see you at four o'clock tomorrow.  
All right. I'll wait for you at four o'clock.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| 7. hái shi        | still                         |
| 8. wàiguo         | foreign, abroad               |
| 9. wàiguo rén     | foreigner (non-Chinese)       |
| 10. wūzi (yìjiān) | room                          |
| 11. yāo           | one (telephone pronunciation) |

---

\* The remaining sentences in this exchange occur on the C-1 tape.



## UNIT 5

### REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

1. B: Wài. Hello.  
A: Wèi, shì Wàijiāobù ma? Hello. Is this the Ministry of Foreign Affairs?  
A: Wǒ yào zhǎo Lín Sīzhǎng shuō huà. I want to speak with Department Chief Lín.
2. B: Nín shì nǎr a? Who is this?  
A: Wǒ xìng Lèkēláier. Wǒ shì Fǎguó Dàshìguǎnde Shāngwù Jīngjiguān. My name is Leclair. I am the Commercial/Economics Officer from the French Embassy.  
B: Nín děngyíděng, wǒ gěi nín kànkan tā zài bu zài. Wait a moment. I'll see whether he is here or not.
3. B: Wài, tā zhèihuǐr bú zài. Nín yào liú ge huàr ma? Hello. He is not here at the moment. Would you like to leave a message?  
A: Láojià, tā huílaide shíhou, nín qǐng ta gěi wo dǎ ge diànhuà. When he comes back, please ask him to give me a phone call.
4. B: Hǎo, qǐng nín bǎ nín de diànhuà hàomǎr gào sòng wǒ. Wǒ xièxià lái. All right. Please tell me your phone number. I'll write it down.  
A: Wǒ de diànhuà shì wǔ èr yāo-sān sān yāo. My phone number is 521-331.
5. C: Duìbuqǐ, nǐ gāngcái géi wo dǎ diànhuà, wǒ bú zài. I'm sorry. When you called me just now, I wasn't in.  
C: Nǐ yǒu shì ma? Can I help you with something?  
A: Shì a! Wǒ nèitiān gēn nín yuēhǎole míngtiān shídiǎn dào nín bàngōngshì qu tán tan. Yes, you can. The other day I made an appointment with you to go to your office at ten o'clock tomorrow for a talk.
6. A: Yīnwei míngtiān zǎoshang wǒ yǒu yíjiàn yào jǐn de shì, suǒyì xiǎng wèn nín wǒmen néng bu néng gǎi dào xiàwǔ. Because I have an urgent business matter tomorrow morning, I want to ask you whether we can change it [the appointment] to the afternoon.

6. Zhāng Xiānsheng, Zhāng Tàitai,  
nín hǎo? zuò yìhuǐ

Zhāng Xiānsheng, Zhāng Tàitai, nín  
hǎo? Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuò  
yìhuǐ.

7. Qián Kēzhāng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn.  
zuòzuo

Qián Kēzhāng, hǎo jiǔ bú jiàn.  
Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuòzuo.



D. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒmen yǐhòu jiànmiànde<br>jīhui hěn duō.<br>(We will have many more<br>opportunities to meet<br>in the future.) | <u>You</u> : Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhui duō<br>jiànmiàn.<br>(I hope that in the future we<br>will have an opportunity to<br>meet more.) |
| 2. Wǒ yǐhòu xiàng nín qǐngjiàode<br>jīhui hěn duō.                                                                                  | Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhui duō xiàng<br>nín qǐngjiào.                                                                                   |
| 3. Wǒmen yǐhòu shuō Zhōngguo huàde<br>jīhui hěn duō.                                                                                | Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhui duō shuō<br>Zhōngguo huà.                                                                                    |
| 4. Wǒ yǐhòu xué Zhōngwénde jīhui<br>hěn duō.                                                                                        | Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhui duō xué<br>Zhōngwén.                                                                                         |
| 5. Wǒmen yǐhòu láide jīhui hěn duō.                                                                                                 | Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhui duō láí.                                                                                                     |
| 6. Wǒmen yǐhòu zài yìqǐde jīhui<br>hěn duō.                                                                                         | Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhui duō zài yìqǐ.                                                                                                |
| 7. Wǒ yǐhòu lǚxíngde jīhui hěn duō.                                                                                                 | Xīwàng yǐhòu yǒu jīhui duō lǚxíng.                                                                                                  |

E. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Huáng Kēzhǎng, huānyíng,<br>huānyíng.<br>(cue) zuò<br>(Section Chief Huáng,<br>welcome, welcome.) | <u>You</u> : Huáng Kēzhǎng, huānyíng,<br>huānyíng. Qǐng jìn, qǐng<br>jìnlai zuò.<br>(Section Chief Huáng, welcome,<br>welcome. Please come in<br>and sit down.) |
| 2. Wáng Xiǎojiě, nín hǎo?<br>zuòzuo                                                                                   | Wáng Xiǎojiě, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn,<br>qǐng jìnlai zuòzuo.                                                                                                         |
| 3. Lǐ Xiānsheng, nín hǎo?<br>hē yìdiǎn chá                                                                            | Lǐ Xiānsheng, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn,<br>qǐng jìnlai hē yìdiǎn chá.                                                                                                  |
| 4. Wú Kēzhǎng, nín hǎo?      zuò                                                                                      | Wú Kēzhǎng, nín hǎo? Qǐng jìn,<br>qǐng jìnlai zuò.                                                                                                              |
| 5. Zhào Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng.<br>zuò                                                                            | Zhào Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng.<br>Qǐng jìn, qǐng jìnlai zuò.                                                                                                  |

5. Tā shì Lǚ Kēzhǎng. Tā zài Táiwan Yínháng gōngzuò.
6. Tā shì Liú Xiǎojiě. Tā zài Táidà niàn shū.
7. Tā shì Hǎn Jiàoshòu. Tā zài Táidà jiāo zhèngzhixué.

Zhèiwèi shì Lǚ Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwan Yínháng gōngzuò.

Zhèiwèi shì Liú Xiǎojiě, zài Táidà niàn shū.

Zhèiwèi shì Hǎn Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo zhèngzhixué.

C. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Yǒu hěn duō dìfang wǒ bù shóuxi.  
(There is much I'm not familiar with.)

OR      Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō rén bù hē chá.  
(There are many people here who don't drink tea.)

You: Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō bù shóuxide dìfang.

(There is still much I'm not familiar with.)

Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō bù hē cháde rén.

(There are many non-tea drinking people here.)

2. Yǒu hěn duō dìfang wǒ tīngbudǒng.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō tīngbudǒngde dìfang.

3. Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō rén bú kàn bào.

Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō bú kàn bàode rén.

4. Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō rén bú huì shuō Zhōngguo huà.

Zài zhèr, yǒu hěn duō bú huì shuō Zhōngguo huàde rén.

5. Yǒu hěn duō dìfang wǒ bú huì zuò.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō bú huì zuòde dìfang.

6. Yǒu hěn duō dìfang wǒ kànbudǒng.

Wǒ hái yǒu hěn duō kànbudǒngde dìfang.

DRILLS

A. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta huà yìzhāng huà.<br/>(I'm thinking of asking him to paint a painting.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta huàle yìzhāng huà.<br/>(I asked him especially to paint a painting.)</p> |
| <p>2. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta chī yíci Zhōngguó fàn.</p>                                                                 | <p>Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta chīle yíci Zhōngguó fàn.</p>                                                         |
| <p>3. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta mǎi liǎngzhāng Táiběi dìtú.</p>                                                            | <p>Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta mǎile liǎngzhāng Táiběi dìtú.</p>                                                    |
| <p>4. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta jiāo liǎngnián.</p>                                                                        | <p>Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta jiāole liǎngnián.</p>                                                                |
| <p>5. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta huà yìzhāng Zhōngguó huà.</p>                                                              | <p>Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta huàle yìzhāng Zhōngguó huà.</p>                                                      |
| <p>6. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta lái yíci.</p>                                                                              | <p>Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta lái yíci.</p>                                                                        |
| <p>7. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng ta kàn yíci diànyǐng.</p>                                                                     | <p>Wǒ tèbié qǐng ta kànle yíci diànyǐng.</p>                                                             |

B. Combination Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Tā shì Hé Jiàoshòu.<br/>Tā zài Táidà jiāo jīngjixué.<br/>(He is Professor Hé.<br/>He teaches economics at Taiwan University.)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Zhèiwèi shì Hé Jiàozhòu, zài Táidà jiāo jīngjixué.<br/>(This is Professor Hé, who teaches economics at Taiwan University.)</p> |
| <p>2. Tā shì Wáng Kēzhǎng. Tā zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò.</p>                                                                                                | <p>Zhèiwèi shì Wáng Kēzhǎng, zài Wàijiāobù gōngzuò.</p>                                                                                       |
| <p>3. Tā shì Shěn Shàoxiào. Tā zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.</p>                                                                                               | <p>Zhèiwèi shì Shěn Shàoxiào, zài Wǔguānchù gōngzuò.</p>                                                                                      |
| <p>4. Tā shì Lín Jiàoshòu. Tā zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué jiāo shū.</p>                                                                                           | <p>Zhèiwèi shì Lín Jiàoshòu, zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué jiāo shū.</p>                                                                                  |

tián  
to be sweet

tíng  
to stop  
to halt

tuī  
to push

yuǎn  
to be far

zǎo  
to be early

zhēn  
to be true  
to be real  
to be genuine

kǔ  
to be bitter

zǒu  
to go  
to walk

lā  
to pull

jìn  
to be near

wǎn  
to be late

jiǎ  
to be false  
to be fake  
to be artificial

jiànkāng  
to be healthy

kuān  
to be wide  
to be broad

lái  
to come

lèi  
to be tired

lěng  
to be cold

liángkuai  
to be cool

mǎn  
to be full

mǎn  
to be slow

máng  
to be busy

niánqīng  
to be young

piányi  
to be inexpensive  
to be cheap

piàoliang  
to be beautiful

qiáng  
to be strong

róngyi  
to be easy

shēng  
to be born

yǒu bìng  
to be ill  
to be sick

zhǎi  
to be narrow

qù  
to go

yǒu jīngshen  
to be lively  
to be spirited  
to be vigorous

rè  
to be hot

nuǎnhuo  
to be warm

kōng  
to be vacant  
to be empty

kuài  
to be fast

xián  
to be idle  
to be unoccupied

lǎo  
to be old (in years)

guì  
to be expensive

nánkàn  
to be ugly

ruò  
to be weak

nán  
to be difficult

sǐ  
to die

VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Opposites

ānjìng  
to be peaceful

rènao  
to be lively  
to be bustling  
to be noisy

cháng  
to be long

duǎn  
to be short

cōngmíng  
to be intelligent  
to be bright

bēn  
to be stupid  
to be foolish

dà  
to be large

xiǎo  
to be small

dàodá  
to arrive  
to reach

líkāi  
to leave

duì  
to be correct

cuò  
to make a mistake  
to be wrong

gānjìng (gānjìng)  
to be clean

zāng  
to be dirty

gāo  
to be tall

ǎi  
to be short (of stature)

gāoxìng  
to be happy

nánguò  
to feel sorry  
to feel bad  
to be grieved

gōngzuò  
to work

xiūxi  
to rest  
to relax

hǎo  
to be good  
to be well

huài  
to be bad

jiǎndān  
to be simple

fùzá (fùzá)  
to be complicated  
to be complex



7. B: Náli, náli. Not at all, not at all.  
 B: Xiwang yǐhòu yǒu jīhui duō I hope that in the future we will  
 jiànmiàn. have an opportunity to meet more.

Note on No. 7

The adjectival verb duō, "to be much," "to be many," is used in No. 7 as an adverb meaning "much," "more." Shǎo may be used in the same way.

- |                             |                                                                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Kāfēi bù néng duō hē.       | One must not drink too much coffee.                                                 |
| Nǐ duō chī diǎnr ba.        | Eat a little more.                                                                  |
| Tā duō zhùle liǎngtiān.     | He stayed two days longer.                                                          |
| Wǒ shǎo mǎile yìzhāng piào. | I bought one ticket too few.<br>(more literally, "I underbought<br>by one ticket.") |
| Tā shuō tā yào shǎo chī.    | He says he wants to eat less (cut<br>down on eating).                               |

- |               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 8. fāngfǎ     | method, way, means               |
| 9. fázi       | method, way                      |
| 10. huà       | painting (Běijīng pronunciation) |
| 11. qǐng zuò  | please have a seat               |
| 12. shèhuìxué | sociology                        |
| 13. túshūguǎn | library                          |
| 14. zuò       | to sit                           |

Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Here are a few sentences illustrating some of the words:

- |                                                                |                                                              |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Nǐde shèhuìxué xuéde zhènme hǎo! Nǐ yòng shénme fāngfǎ niànde? | You learned your sociology so well!<br>How do you study it?  |
| Měitiān zài túshūguǎn sìge zhōngtóu.                           | I spend four hours in the library everyday.                  |
| Ài! Wǒ méiyǒu fázi zài túshūguǎn zuò sìge zhōngtóu.            | Boy! There's no way I can sit in the library for four hours. |

5. B: Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng. Glad to meet you.  
B: Nín lái le duō jiǔ le? How long have you been here?  
C: Jiǔyǎng. Wǒ gāng lái liǎngge yuè. Glad to meet you. It has been only two months since I came.

Notes on No. 5

Jiǔyǎng means, literally, "I have looked up to you for a long time" or "I have looked forward to meeting you." It is used when meeting someone of higher status. Because jiǔyǎng implies a status difference, the expression is not often used in the PRC.

Gāng, "only just": You have learned the sentence Wǒ lái liǎngge yuè le, "I have been here two months now." In the last sentence of exchange 5, notice that no le is needed. The focus has shifted from the coming to the shortness of the period; that is, the focus is on gāng.

6. C: Hái yǒu hěn duō bù shóuxide dìfang. There is still much I'm not familiar with.  
C: Yǐhòu hái yào xiàng nín qǐngjiào. Later I'll need to request more advice from you.

Notes on No. 6

Shóuxi, "to be familiar [with the details of something]," is also pronounced shúxi.

Dìfang means "areas," "aspects" (NOT "places") in the first sentence of No. 6. Thus shóuxide dìfang means "areas/aspects one is familiar with."

Xiàng nín qǐngjiào is a polite way of requesting advice from someone--for example, a teacher, an advisor, or a senior colleague. Here, the prepositional verb xiàng means "from." (You learned xiàng as "towards" in the Directions Module.) Literally, it means "facing." Less formally, you may also say gēn nín qǐngjiào. Qǐngjiào (literally, "request instruction") may be reduplicated or used with an object in sentences like the following:

Wǒ yào gēn nín qǐngjiào  
yíjiàn shì.

I would like to consult with you  
about something.

Wǒ yào gēn nín qǐngjiào  
qǐngjiào.

Yǐhòu hái yào...: In this sentence, hái means "still more," or "additionally."

Zhēn shì tài kèqì, "really too polite," is a variation of Nín zhēn tài kèqì. Shì is sometimes used simply to show that the subject of a sentence fits the description that follows.

4. A: Zhèiwei shì Hé Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo jīngjixué. This is Professor Hollins, who teaches economics at Taiwan University.
- A: Hé Jiàoshòu, zhèiwei shì Huáng Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò. Professor Hollins, this is Section Chief Huáng, who works at the Bank of Taiwan.
- A: Zhèiwei shì Huáng Tàitai. This is Mrs. Huáng.

Notes on No. 4

Jiàoshòu, "professor": The first syllable in this word means "teaching." Notice that the tone on jiào is different from the tone on the verb "to teach," jiāo.

Táidà is the abbreviation for Táiwān Dàxué, "Taiwan University."

Zhèiwei shì Huáng Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò looks like a run-on sentence, with the pronoun tā dropped from the second part of the sentence. In Chinese, this is a perfectly good way to add a second clause to a sentence. To characterize a person or thing just identified, the Chinese simply attach a descriptive sentence and omit the subject. You have already learned this pattern: Wángfūjǐng Dàjiē yǒu yige Xīnhuá Shūdiàn, hěn dà. Here are some additional examples:

- Tā tàitai shì Rìběn rén, xiànzài zài Shànghǎi. His wife is Japanese; she is in Shànghǎi now.
- Wǒ yǒu yige péngyou xìng Wú, zài Dōnghǎi Dàxué jiāo shū, míngnián xiǎng dào Měiguó qù. I have a friend named Wú who teaches at Dōnghǎi University. He is planning to go to America next year.

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Huáng Kēzhǎng, Huáng Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng. Section Chief Huáng, Mrs. Huáng-- welcome.  
 A: Qǐng jìn. Please come in.
2. B: Fù Tàitai, nín hǎo? How are you, Mrs. Franklin?  
 B: Zhè shì yìdiǎn xiǎo yìsi. Here is a small token of appreciation.

Note on Nos. 1-2

Xiǎo yìsi: You have already seen yìsi in the expression yǒu yìsi, "to be interesting." Yìsi means "meaning," "significance," "intention," "idea." In No. 2, above, xiǎo yìsi (literally, "small [good] intent") is an idiomatic expression meaning "a small (token of my) feelings of appreciation."

3. B: Wǒ zhīdao nín xǐhuan shān-shuǐ huà. I know you like landscape paintings.  
 B: Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huàle yìzhāng. I asked a friend to paint one especially for you.  
 A: Nín zhēn shì tài kèqi. You are really too polite. Thanks.  
 Xièxie.  
 A: Lái, wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshao jièshao. Come. I'll introduce the two of you.

Notes on No. 3

Shānshuǐ, "mountains and rivers," "scenery with hills and water," is a compound made up of shān, "mountain," and shuǐ, "water." In shānshuǐ, shuǐ refers to rivers or lakes.

Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huàle yìzhāng: Notice that the verb huà is followed by the completion marker le. For this reason, the sentence means that the painting has been finished. The completed-action sense of huàle might be captured by looser translations of the sentence, like "I asked a friend, and he painted one for you" and "I asked a friend, who painted one for you."

The sentence Wǒ tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huà yìzhāng, without le, does not indicate whether the painting has been finished or not. The sentence might be used when a speaker thinks that a painting has not yet been finished.

VOCABULARY

fāngfǎ fǎzi	method, way, means method, way (Běijīng)
huà huà(r) (yìzhāng) huānyíng	to paint a painting to welcome
jiànmiàn jiàoshòu jìn jiǔyǎng	to meet someone, to see someone professor to enter glad to meet you
qǐngjiào qǐng zuò	to ask advice, to consult please sit down
shānshuǐ shānshuǐ huà(r) (yìzhāng) shèhuìxué shóuxi	mountains and rivers, scenery with hills and water landscape painting sociology to be familiar
Táidà tèbié túshūguǎn	Taiwan University especially library
xiàng xiǎo yìsi	towards; from a token of appreciation
zuò	to sit

(introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)

biǎoyǎn	to give a demonstration
bú dà hǎo mǎi	not very easy to buy
duì...shóuxi	to be familiar with
Jiàoyùbù	Ministry of Education
mǎi cài	to buy groceries
sòng gei	to give to
xǐ yīshang	to wash clothes
yánjiū	to study, to do research
yòu'éryuán	kindergarten
yóu huà	oil painting
zhǎnlǎn	exhibition
zhàogu	to take care of
zuò fàn	to cook
zuòyè	homework

7. B: Náli, náli.

B: Xīwang yǐhòu yǒu jīhui duō  
jiànmiàn.

Not at all, not at all.

I hope that in the future we will  
have an opportunity to meet more.

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 8. fāngfǎ     | method, way, means               |
| 9. fázi       | method, way                      |
| 10. huà       | painting (Běijīng pronunciation) |
| 11. qǐng zuò  | please sit down                  |
| 12. shèhuìxué | sociology                        |
| 13. túshūguǎn | library                          |
| 14. zuò       | to sit                           |

UNIT 4

REFERENCE LIST

- |    |                                                                        |                                                                                  |
|----|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. | A: Huáng Kēzhǎng, Huáng Tàitai, huānyíng, huānyíng.                    | Section Chief Huáng, Mrs. Huáng--welcome.                                        |
|    | A: Qǐng jìn.                                                           | Please come in.                                                                  |
| 2. | B: Fù Tàitai, nín hǎo?                                                 | How are you, Mrs. Franklin?                                                      |
|    | B: Zhè shì yìdiǎn xiǎo yìsi.                                           | Here is a small token of appreciation.                                           |
| 3. | B: Wǒ zhīdao nín xǐhuan shānshuǐ huà.                                  | I know you like landscape paintings.                                             |
|    | B: Tèbié qǐng péngyou gěi nín huàle yìzhāng.                           | I asked a friend to paint one especially for you.                                |
|    | *A: Nín zhēn shì tài kèqi. Xièxie.                                     | You are really too polite. Thanks.                                               |
|    | A: Lái, wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshao jièshao.                                  | Come. I'll introduce the two of you.                                             |
| 4. | A: Zhèiwei shì Hé Jiàoshòu, zài Táidà jiāo jīngjixué.                  | This is Professor Hollins, who teaches economics at Taiwan University.           |
|    | A: Hé Jiàoshòu, zhèiwei shì Huáng Kēzhǎng, zài Táiwān Yínháng gōngzuò. | Professor Hollins, this is Section Chief Huáng, who works at the Bank of Taiwan. |
|    | A: Zhèiwei shì Huáng Tàitai.                                           | This is Mrs. Huáng.                                                              |
| 5. | B: Jiǔyǎng, jiǔyǎng.                                                   | Glad to meet you.                                                                |
|    | B: Nín lái le duō jiǔ le?                                              | How long have you been here?                                                     |
|    | C: Jiǔyǎng. Wǒ gāng lái liǎngge yuè.                                   | Glad to meet you. It has been only two months since I came.                      |
| 6. | C: Hái yǒu hěn duō bù shóuxide dìfang.                                 | There is still much I'm not familiar with.                                       |
|    | C: Yǐhòu hái yào xiàng nín qǐngjiào.                                   | Later I'll need to request more advice from you.                                 |

---

\*The remaining sentences in this exchange occur on the C-1 tape.

- |                                                   |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 5. Nǐde fàn gēn tāde yíyàng duō.<br>chī           | Nǐ chī fàn, chīde gēn tā yíyàng duō.            |
| 6. Nǐde diànhuà gēn tāde yíyàng duō.<br>dǎ        | Nǐ dǎ diànhuà, dǎde gēn tā yíyàng duō.          |
| 7. Nǐde Zhōngguo huà gēn tāde yíyàng hǎo.<br>shuō | Nǐ shuō Zhōngguo huà, shuōde gēn tā yíyàng hǎo. |

I. Response Drill

- |                                                                            |                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ qǐng jǐge rén?<br>(How many people did you invite?) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ méi qǐng jǐge rén.<br>(I didn't invite many at all.) |
| OR Tā hē shénme?<br>(What does he drink?)                                  | Tā bù hē shénme.<br>(He doesn't drink much of anything.)             |
| 2. Nǐ qǐng shéi?                                                           | Wǒ bù qǐng shéi.                                                     |
| 3. Tā mǎile jǐběn shū?                                                     | Tā méi mǎi jǐběn shū.                                                |
| 4. Nǐ qǐng shénme rén?                                                     | Wǒ bù qǐng shénme rén.                                               |
| 5. Tā dào nǎr qù le?                                                       | Tā méi dào nǎr qù.                                                   |
| 6. Nǐ yǒu duōshao qián?                                                    | Wǒ méiyǒu duōshao qián.                                              |



G. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ bù néng dào Zhōngguo qù. Wǒde Zhōngwén bù xíng.<br>(I can't go to China.<br>My Chinese isn't good enough.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ hěn xīwàng dào Zhōngguo qù, búguò kǒngpà wǒde Zhōngwén bù xíng.<br>(I hope very much to go to China, but I'm afraid my Chinese isn't good enough.) |
| 2. Tā bù kéyi xué Zhōngwén. Tā méiyǒu gōngfu.                                                                                     | Tā hěn xīwàng xué Zhōngwén, búguò kǒngpà tā méiyǒu gōngfu.                                                                                                         |
| 3. Wǒ bù kéyi mǎi dōngxī. Wǒde qián bú gòu.                                                                                       | Wǒ hěn xīwàng mǎi dōngxī, búguò kǒngpà wǒde qián bú gòu.                                                                                                           |
| 4. Wǒ bù néng qù kàn péngyou. Wǒ méiyǒu gōngfu.                                                                                   | Wǒ hěn xīwàng qù kàn péngyou, búguò kǒngpà wǒ méiyǒu gōngfu.                                                                                                       |
| 5. Wǒ bù néng shuō Zhōngguo huà. Wǒde Zhōngguo huà bù xíng.                                                                       | Wǒ hěn xīwàng shuō Zhōngguo huà, búguò kǒngpà wǒde Zhōngguo huà bù xíng.                                                                                           |
| 6. Wǒ bù néng gēn tā qù chī fàn. Wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān.                                                                               | Wǒ hěn xīwàng gēn tā qù chī fàn, búguò kǒngpà wǒ méiyǒu shíjiān.                                                                                                   |
| 7. Wǒ bù kéyi qù kāi huì. Wǒ tīngbudǒng tāmen shuōde huà.                                                                         | Wǒ hěn xīwàng qù kāi huì, búguò kǒngpà wǒ tīngbudǒng tāmen shuōde huà.                                                                                             |

H. Transformation Drill

- |                                                                                                     |                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐde chá gēn tāde yíyàng duō.<br>(cue) hē<br>(You have as much tea as he does.) | <u>You</u> : Nǐ hē chá, hēde gēn tā yíyàng duō.<br>(You drink as much tea as he does.) |
| 2. Nǐde dōngxī gēn tāde yíyàng piányi. mǎi                                                          | Nǐ mǎi dōngxī, mǎide gēn tā yíyàng piányi.                                             |
| 3. Nǐde shū gēn tāde yíyàng duō. niàn                                                               | Nǐ niàn shū, niànde gēn tā yíyàng duō.                                                 |
| 4. Nǐde shū gēn tāde yíyàng hǎo. jiāo                                                               | Nǐ jiāo shū, jiāode gēn tā yíyàng hǎo.                                                 |

E. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Tā tīngbujīàn.  
(cue) kànbutiàn  
(He can't hear.)

You: Tā búdàn tīngbujīàn yě  
kànbutiàn.  
(Not only can't he hear, [but]  
he can't see either.)

2. Tā shuōbutuì. tīngbudǒng

Tā búdàn shuōbutuì yě tīngbudǒng.

3. Tā chībuhǎo. hēbuhǎo

Tā búdàn chībuhǎo yě hēbuhǎo.

4. Tā shuōbutuì. xiěbutuì

Tā búdàn shuōbutuì yě xiěbutuì.

5. Tā kànbudǒng. tīngbudǒng

Tā búdàn kànbudǒng yě tīngbudǒng.

6. Tā tīngbudǒng. shuōbutuì

Tā búdàn tīngbudǒng yě shuōbutuì.

7. Tā kànbutiàn. tīngbujīàn

Tā búdàn kànbutiàn yě tīngbujīàn.

F. Combination Drill

1. Speaker: Tā shuōde bù hǎo. Tā  
tīngbudǒng.  
(He speaks poorly. He  
can't understand.)

You: Tā búdàn shuōde bù hǎo yě  
tīngbudǒng.  
(He not only speaks poorly,  
[but] he can't understand  
either.)

OR Tā shuōde bù hǎo. Wǒ  
shuōde bù hǎo.  
(He speaks poorly. I  
speak poorly.)

Búdàn tā shuōde bù hǎo wǒ yě  
shuōde bù hǎo.  
(Not only does he speak poorly,  
[but] I speak poorly too.)

2. Tā niànde hǎo. Tā xiědehǎo.

Tā búdàn niànde hǎo yě xiědehǎo.

3. Tā niànde hǎo. Wǒ niànde hǎo.

Búdàn tā niànde hǎo wǒ yě niànde hǎo.

4. Tā tīngbudǒng. Tā shuōbuhǎo.

Tā búdàn tīngbudǒng yě shuōbuhǎo.

5. Tā kāide bù hǎo. Wǒ kāide bù  
hǎo.

Búdàn tā kāide bù hǎo wǒ yě kāide  
bù hǎo.

6. Tā kànbutiàn. Tā tīngbudǒng.

Tā búdàn kànbutiàn yě tīngbudǒng.

6. Wáng Xiānsheng zài Táiwān Dàxué  
gōngzuò ma?  
Zhōngguó wénxué

Duì le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo  
Zhōngguó wénxué.

7. Zhào Xiǎojie zài Táiwān Dàxué  
gōngzuò ma?  
Zhōngguó lìshǐ

Duì le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo  
Zhōngguó lìshǐ.

D. Transformation Drill

1. Speaker: Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào  
jièshào.  
(cue) Wáng Tóngzhì  
(I'll introduce you.)

You: Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn  
Wáng Tóngzhì jièshào jièshào.  
(I would very much like to  
introduce you and Comrade  
Wáng.)

2. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.  
Liú Tóngzhì

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Liú  
Tóngzhì jièshào jièshào.

3. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.  
Zhào Tóngzhì

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Zhào  
Tóngzhì jièshào jièshào.

4. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.  
Zhāng Xiānsheng

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Zhāng  
Xiānsheng jièshào jièshào.

5. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.  
Yáng Nǚshì

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Yáng  
Nǚshì jièshào jièshào.

6. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.  
Zhāng Kēzhāng

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Zhāng  
Kēzhāng jièshào jièshào.

7. Wǒ gěi nǐmen jièshào jièshào.  
Lǐ Shàoxiào

Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nǐmen gēn Lǐ  
Shàoxiào jièshào jièshào.

B. Expansion Drill

1. Speaker: Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.  
(cue) wǒmen jiā  
(I would like to invite  
you.)

OR Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.  
(cue) fānguǎnr  
(I would like to invite  
you.)

You: Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào wǒmen  
jiā lái chī ge biānfàn.  
(I would like to invite you to  
our house for a simple meal.)

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào fānguǎnr  
qù chī ge biānfàn.  
(I would like to invite you to  
go to a restaurant for a  
simple meal.)

2. Tā xiǎng qǐng nín.  
Mínzú Fàndiàn

Tā xiǎng qǐng nín dào Mínzú Fàndiàn  
qù chī ge biānfàn.

3. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.  
wǒ fùmǔ jiā

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào wǒ fùmǔ jiā  
lái chī ge biānfàn.

4. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.  
Běijīng Fàndiàn

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào Běijīng  
Fàndiàn qù chī ge biānfàn.

5. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.  
nèige fānguǎnr

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào nèige fānguǎnr  
qù chī ge biānfàn.

6. Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín.  
wǒ jiā

Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín dào wǒ jiā lái  
chī ge biānfàn.

C. Response Drill

1. Speaker: Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué  
gōngzuò ma?  
(cue) jīngjixué  
(Does he work at Taiwan  
University?)

You: Duì le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué  
jiāo jīngjixué.  
(That's right. He teaches  
economics at Taiwan  
University.)

2. Tā zài Dézhōu Dàxué gōngzuò ma?  
lìshǐ

Duì le. Tā zài Dézhōu Dàxué jiāo  
lìshǐ.

3. Lǐ Xiānsheng zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué  
gōngzuò ma? zhèngzhixué

Duì le. Tā zài Jiāzhōu Dàxué jiāo  
zhèngzhixué.

4. Chén Xiānsheng zài Bīnzhōu  
Dàxué gōngzuò ma? Zhōngwén

Duì le. Tā zài Bīnzhōu Dàxué jiāo  
Zhōngwén.

5. Àndésēn Xiānsheng zài Táiwān  
Dàxué gōngzuò ma?  
Yīngguo wénxué

Duì le. Tā zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo  
Yīngguo wénxué.

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>1. <u>Speaker</u>: Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ míngtiān wǎnshang yǒu gōngfu ma?<br/>(cue) míngtiān zǎoshang<br/>(Section Chief Huáng, are you free tomorrow evening?)</p> | <p><u>You</u>: Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ míngtiān zǎoshang yǒu gōngfu ma?<br/>(Section Chief Huáng, are you free tomorrow morning?)</p> |
| <p>2. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ míngtiān zǎoshang yǒu gōngfu ma?<br/>Xīngqīsì</p>                                                                                          | <p>Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ Xīngqīsì yǒu gōngfu ma?</p>                                                                                |
| <p>3. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ Xīngqīsì yǒu gōngfu ma?<br/>jīntiān wǎnshang</p>                                                                                           | <p>Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang yǒu gōngfu ma?</p>                                                                        |
| <p>4. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ jīntiān wǎnshang yǒu gōngfu ma?<br/>xià Xīngqīliù</p>                                                                                      | <p>Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ xià Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?</p>                                                                           |
| <p>5. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ xià Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?<br/>zhèige Xīngqīwǔ</p>                                                                                       | <p>Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige Xīngqīwǔ yǒu gōngfu ma?</p>                                                                         |
| <p>6. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige Xīngqīwǔ yǒu gōngfu ma?<br/>zhèige yuè qíhào</p>                                                                                    | <p>Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige yuè qíhào yǒu gōngfu ma?</p>                                                                        |
| <p>7. Huáng Kēzhǎng, nǐ zhèige yuè qíhào yǒu gōngfu ma?</p>                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                 |

Érqiě, "furthermore," "moreover": Use érqiě at the beginning of a sentence or clause.

Zhèige huāpíng tài guì, érqiě This vase is too expensive, and  
yě tài dà le. Wǒ bù xiǎng furthermore it's too big. I don't  
mǎi. want to buy it.

Fàn, "(cooked) rice": The definition of fàn is qualified as "cooked" because the Chinese use several words for "rice," depending on whether it is in the field, ready to cook, or on the table.

Jiāo shū is a verb plus a general object meaning "to teach." Jiāo may be used without its general object, as in jiāo Zhōngwén, "teach the Chinese language."

Wǒ méiyou duōshao qián.

I don't have any money to speak of.

Wǒ bú yào jǐge.

I don't want but a few. (I want only a few.)

Suíbiàn is a frequently used expression which has connotations of "casual," as contrasted with kèqì, "proper" or "formal." Literally, suíbiàn means "according to convenience." Here are some examples:

Zěnmē zuò?

How shall we do it?

Suíbiàn.

However you like.

Suíbiàn shénme shíhou lái.

Come anytime you like.

Suíbiàn zuò nǎr dōu kěyǐ.

You may sit anywhere you like.

Nà jiù xiān xiè le: In this sentence, nà is acting as an adverb meaning "in that case," "if so," or "then." The English translation "I'll thank you in advance, then" is very formal. You would be more likely to say something like "Great. I'm looking forward to it."

7. bù tóng
8. chá
9. chī fàn
10. dànshi
11. érqǐě
12. fàn
13. hē
14. jiāo shū

to be different  
tea  
to eat, to have a meal  
but  
furthermore, moreover  
(cooked) rice  
to drink  
to teach

#### Notes on Additional Required Vocabulary

Bù tóng may be used in much the same way as bù yíyàng. Note that bù tóng occurs only in the negative. (There is no tóng.)

Shànghǎi huà hé Běijīng huà  
hěn bù tóng.

The Shànghǎi dialect and the Běijīng  
dialect are very different.

Chī fàn, "to eat," is an example of a verb plus a general object used to express a general activity. The verb chī may also take specific objects, such as miàn, "noodles."

Dànshi, "but," is used much like kěshi, "but."

Héběi rén tīngdedǒng Běijīng  
huà ma?

Can people from Héběi understand  
the Běijīng dialect?

Tīngdedǒng, dànshi Héběi huà  
hé Běijīng huà bù yíyàng.

Yes, but the Héběi dialect and the  
Běijīng dialect are different.

Wǒde chē	gēn	tāde chē	yíyàng.
(my car	with	his car	alike)

"My car is like his."

Gēn may be used to compare nouns, pronouns, noun phrases, and clauses. Often, one of the two phrases or clauses is a shorter form of the other.

Nǐ shuōde	gēn	Měiguó rén (shuōde)	yíyàng	hǎo.
(you speak	with	American [speak]	equally	good)

"You speak as well as an American."

Wǒde chē	gēn	tāde (chē)	yíyàng.
(my car	with	his [car]	alike)

"My car is like his (car)."

Nǐ (kāide)	gēn	wǒ	kāide	yíyàng	kuài.
(you [drive]	with	me	drive	equally	fast)

"You drive as fast as I do."

6. A: Wǒ méi qǐng shénme rén. Hěn I haven't invited anyone special.  
       suǐbiān. It's very informal.  
    B: Nà jiù xiān xiè le. Well then, I'll thank you in advance.

Notes on No. 6

Méi qǐng shénme rén: In this sentence, shénme is not the question word "what" but is the indefinite "any." When used with bù or méi, shénme rén means "anyone special," or "anyone in particular." All question words may follow the verbs in negative statements to give similar meanings. Here are some examples of "any\_\_\_ special" meanings:

Wǒ méi chī shénme fàn.

I didn't eat much of anything.

Wǒ méi gēn shéi qù.

I didn't go with anybody special.

Wǒ méi dào nǎr qù.

I didn't go anyplace in particular.



The marker de is always part of the manner adverb expression but alternates with bù in compound verbs of result. Manner adverb expressions expand to allow not only for negation but also for additional adverbs such as hěn and tāi. Compound verbs of result cannot do this. There are always three, and only three, parts to the compound verb of result.

4. A: Náli, náli. Not at all, not at all.  
 A: Nín shuōde gēn Měiguó rén You speak as well as an American.  
 yíyàng hǎo.
5. A: Zěnmeyàng? Liùdiǎn bàn duì How shall we do it? Would six-thirty  
 nín fāngbian bu fāngbian? be convenient for you?  
 B: Fāngbian, fāngbian. That would be fine.

Notes on Nos. 4-5

Gēn...yíyàng hǎo: Yíyàng is an adjectival verb meaning "to be the same." When a sentence tells you in what respect the compared items are alike, yíyàng acts as an adverb and may be translated as "equally."

Wǒmen liǎngge rénde chē	yíyàng.
(the cars belonging to the two of us	alike)

"Our cars are alike."

Wǒmen liǎngge rénde chē	yíyàng guì.
(the cars belonging to the two of us	equally expensive)

"Our cars are equally expensive."

The area of comparability may be described by predicates other than adjectival verbs.

Tāmen liǎngge rén	dōu	yíyàng	xǐhuan	niàn shū.
(the two of them	both	equally	like	to study)

"The two of them are equally studious."

The items being compared may be expressed separately, using gēn. In this case, gēn is the prepositional verb meaning "with." The item preceding gēn is compared WITH the object of gēn.

3. B: Nà tài hǎo le! That's wonderful!  
 B: Hěn xīwang gēn ta tántan. I wish very much to talk with her.  
 B: Búguò, kǒngpà wǒde Yīngwén However, I'm afraid that my English  
 bù xíng. isn't good enough.  
 B: Búdàn shuōde bù hǎo, yǒu Not only don't I speak well, (but)  
 shíhou yě tīngbudǒng. sometimes I can't understand what  
 I hear either.

Notes on No. 3

Tài hǎo le, "wonderful," or, more literally, "too good." You have seen tài translated as "excessively," or "too": "It's too expensive!" Tài guì le! In other contexts, tài simply indicates an extreme degree and is translated as "very." When used this way, tài is commonly heavily stressed.

Zhèiběn shū zhēn shì tài yǒu This book is really very interesting!  
 yìsi le!

Búguò, "however," is often interchangeable with kěshì, "but," and is therefore used more frequently than the English "however."

Kǒngpà means "to be afraid that [something is/is not the case]." It sometimes means "probably," as in Zhèiběn shū kǒngpà shì tāde, "This book is probably his."

Búdàn...yě... is equivalent to the English "not only...but also...." Here are some examples:

Tā búdàn huì shuō Zhōngwén,  
yě huì shuō Rìwén.

Not only can he speak Chinese, but he  
 can also speak Japanese.

Tā búdàn bù xǐhuan hóngde,  
yě bù xǐhuan lánde.

Not only doesn't he like the red one,  
but he doesn't like the blue one  
either.

Tīngbudǒng, "can't understand": The verb dǒng is used to indicate the result in a compound verb of result. Here is another example of dǒng used in this way:

Zhōngwén bàozhǐ nǐ kàndedǒng  
 kànbudǒng?

Can you read (and understand) Chinese  
 newspapers?

Shuōde bù hǎo VS. tīngbudǒng: The many ways in which one-syllable Chinese verbs may be combined to make patterns and compounds can be confusing. In No. 3, you see both an action verb and its manner adverb (in the negative), shuōde bù hǎo, and a compound verb of result (in its "unable" form), tīngbudǒng. Compare these two forms:

ACTION					ACTION MARKER or NEG.		
VERB	MARKER	NEG.	ADV.	MANNER	VERB	(not both)	RESULT
shuō	-DE	bù		hǎo	tīng	-bù	-dǒng
shuō	-DE		hěn	hǎo	tīng	-de	-dǒng

Notes on No. 2

Hébì is a somewhat formal way of saying "Why is it necessary to...?" Hé is a literary word for "why." Bì is a literary word for "must." (You may recognize it from bú bì, "need not," "to be unnecessary.")

Notice that the first speaker in exchange 2 does not respond to the dinner invitation with an immediate "Thank you, I would love to," as one might do in English. Instead, the Chinese prefer the equivalent of "That's too kind of you" or "Oh, you really shouldn't." When you receive an indefinite invitation (like "I hope you can come over to my house for dinner some day"), do not ask immediately for the date and time. Rather, you should thank the person for his politeness and say that you also hope that you can get together. Vague invitations may simply be in superficial accordance with the rules of etiquette, and you might put your acquaintance on the spot by accepting.

Bú shì kèqǐ is the appropriate response when a person suggests that you are treating him too politely.

Jiāo, "to teach," is a verb which requires a general object when no specific object is mentioned. Contrast jiāo shū, "to teach," with jiāo jīngjìxué, "to teach economics."

Nǐmen liǎngwèi means "the two of you," or "you two." The other plural pronouns may be used similarly:

Tāmen sìge rén dōu yǐjīng qùguo le.      Those four have all been there already.

Tāmen sānge rén dōu xiǎng niàn lìshǐ.      All three of them are planning to study history.

A number phrase may also follow a list of nouns or pronouns in Chinese. Either the listing or the number is usually omitted in the English translation.

Wǒ, nǐ, tā sānge rén dōu qù,      Why don't all three of us go?  
hǎo bu hǎo?

Lǐ Xiānsheng gēn Wáng Xiānsheng liǎngwèi dōu gēi wo dǎle diànhuà le.      Both Mr. Lǐ and Mr. Wáng (the two of them) called me.

Gěi nǐmen liǎngwèi jièshao jièshao: There are two things to note in this sentence. First of all, while the English language "introduces two people TO each other," the Chinese language "introduces FOR the two people," gěi...jièshao. Secondly, the speaker has chosen to repeat the verb jièshao. In a sentence expressing the speaker's desired course of action, the reduplicated form of the verb makes the statement less blunt and demanding.

REFERENCE NOTES

1. A: Huáng Kēzhǎng, nín xiàge Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?  
 A: Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín hé nín fūren dào wǒmen jiā lái chī ge biānfàn.

Section Chief Huáng, are you free Saturday of next week?  
 I would like to invite you and your wife to come to our house for a simple meal.

Notes on No. 1

Xiàge Xīngqīliù means "Saturday of next week." "Saturday of this week" is zhèige Xīngqīliù, and "Saturday of last week" is shàngge Xīngqīliù.\*

Chī ge biānfàn: Here the verb chī, "to eat [something]," takes the object (yì)ge biānfàn, "a simple/informal family meal." When talking about the general activity of eating, however, use chī with the general object fàn, literally "(cooked) rice": chī fàn, "to eat"

The word biānfàn is used as a modest description in inviting guests for a meal served in the home. The meal is generally "simple" only in the sense of not being a banquet. A Chinese family meal usually consists of several dishes plus a soup.

2. B: Nín hébì zhème kèqi?  
 A: Bú shì kèqi.  
 A: Wǒ yǒu yige péngyou gāng cóng Měiguó lái.  
 A: Tā xiànzài zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo jīngjixué.  
 A: Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nimen liǎngwèi jièshao jièshao.

Why is it necessary to be so polite?  
 It's not politeness.  
 I have a friend who has just come from America.  
 She is teaching economics at Taiwan University right now.  
 I would very much like to introduce the two of you.

---

\*The words "this," "next," and "last" in English are often ambiguous. "This" sometimes means "just past," sometimes "the coming," and sometimes "of next week." "Next" sometimes means "the coming" and sometimes means "of next week." "Last" sometimes means "just past" and sometimes means "of last week." In Chinese, however, zhèige usually means "of this week"; xiàge, "of next week"; and shàngge, "of last week." But ambiguities do sometimes arise.

Some Chinese consider that the week begins on Sunday. Probably most Chinese, however, consider Monday the first day of the week.

VOCABULARY

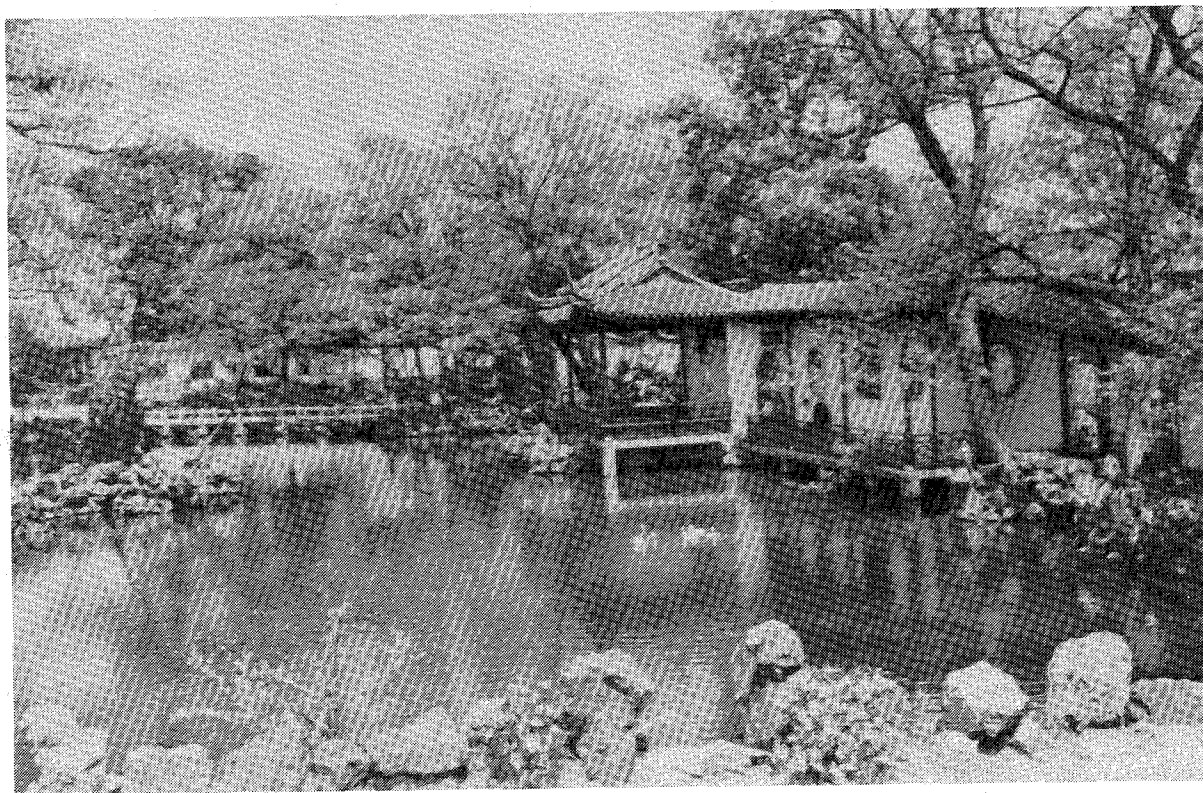
biānfàn búdàn...yě búguò bù tóng	a simple, informal meal not only...but also however, but to be different
chá chī fàn	tea to eat, to have a meal
dànshi	but
érgiě	furthermore, moreover
fàn	(cooked) rice
hē hébì	to drink why is it necessary (to)
jiāo shū jièshao	to teach to introduce
kǒngpà	to be afraid that (something is or is not the case)
suíbiàn	to be informal/casual; as you like, as you wish, whatever suits you, "according to convenience"
tài hǎo le! tīngbudǒng tīngdedǒng	wonderful! cannot understand can understand
xīwàng (xīwang)	to hope, to wish to
yíyàng yǒu shíhou (yǒu shihou)	to be alike/equal sometimes

(introduced on C-2 tape)

cānjiā	to attend
dǎ (ge) diànhuà	to make a phone call
hǎode duō	much better
tīng diànhuà	to answer the phone
yānhuo	fireworks display
yóuyuánhuì	carnival
zhèng hǎo	just right

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |              |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|
| 7. bù tóng   | to be different        |
| 8. chá       | tea                    |
| 9. chī fàn   | to eat, to have a meal |
| 10. dànshi   | but                    |
| 11. érqǐě    | furthermore, moreover  |
| 12. fàn      | (cooked) rice          |
| 13. hē       | to drink               |
| 14. jiāo shū | to teach               |



UNIT 3

REFERENCE LIST

(in Taipei)

- |                                                                     |                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. A: Huáng Kēzhǎng, nín xiàge Xīngqīliù yǒu gōngfu ma?             | Section Chief Huáng, are you free Saturday of next week?                            |
| A: Wǒ xiǎng qǐng nín hé nín fūren dào wǒmen jiā lái chī ge biānfàn. | I would like to invite you and your wife to come to our house for a simple meal.    |
| 2. B: Nín hébì zhème kèqi?                                          | Why is it necessary to be so polite?                                                |
| A: Bú shì kèqi.                                                     | It's not politeness.                                                                |
| A: Wǒ yǒu yige péngyou gāng cóng Měiguó lái.                        | I have a friend who has just come from America.                                     |
| A: Tā xiànzài zài Táiwān Dàxué jiāo jīngjìxué.                      | She is teaching economics at Taiwan University right now.                           |
| A: Wǒ hěn xiǎng gěi nimen liǎngwèi jièshào jièshào.                 | I would very much like to introduce the two of you.                                 |
| 3. B: Nà tài hǎo le!                                                | That's wonderful!                                                                   |
| B: Hěn xīwang gēn ta tán.                                           | I wish very much to talk with her.                                                  |
| B: Búguò, kǒngpà wǒde Yīngwén bù xíng.                              | However, I'm afraid that my English isn't good enough.                              |
| B: Búdàn shuōde bù hǎo, yǒu shíhou yě tīngbudǒng.                   | Not only don't I speak well, (but) sometimes I can't understand what I hear either. |
| 4. A: Náli, náli.                                                   | Not at all, not at all.                                                             |
| A: Nín shuōde gēn Měiguó rén yíyàng hǎo.                            | You speak as well as an American.                                                   |
| 5. *A: Zěnmeyàng? Liùdiǎn bàn duì nín fāngbian bu fāngbian?         | How shall we do it? Would six-thirty be convenient for you?                         |
| B: Fāngbian, fāngbian.                                              | That would be fine.                                                                 |
| 6. A: Wǒ méi qǐng shénme rén. Hěn suíbiàn.                          | I haven't invited anyone special. It's very informal.                               |
| B: Nà jiù xiān xiè le.                                              | Well then, I'll thank you in advance.                                               |

---

\*The remaining sentences in this exchange occur on the C-1 tape.

H. Response Drill

- |                                                          |                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Nǐ qù nǎr?<br>(Where are you going?) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ nǎr dōu qù.<br>(I'm going everywhere.) |
| 2. Nǐ dào nǎr qù?                                        | Wǒ nǎr dōu qù.                                         |
| 3. Tā qù shénme dìfang?                                  | Tā shénme dìfang dōu qù.                               |
| 4. Tā dào shénme dìfang qù?                              | Tā shénme dìfang dōu qù.                               |
| 5. Nǐ mǎi něige?                                         | Wǒ něige dōu mǎi.                                      |
| 6. Nǐ kàn něiběn?                                        | Wǒ něiběn dōu kàn.                                     |
| 7. Nǐ zuò shénme?                                        | Wǒ shénme dōu zuò.                                     |

I. Response Drill

- |                                                                     |                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Shéi lái?<br>(cue) everyone<br>(Who is coming?) | <u>You</u> : Shéi dōu lái.<br>(Everyone is coming.) |
| 2. Shéi kěyǐ? anyone will do                                        | Shéi dōu kěyǐ.                                      |
| 3. Shéi lái? no one                                                 | Shéi dōu bù lái.                                    |
| 4. Nǐ mǎi něige? all of them                                        | Wǒ něige dōu mǎi.                                   |
| 5. Nǐ dào nǎr qù? nowhere at all                                    | Wǒ nǎr dōu bú qù.                                   |
| 6. Něige hǎo? all of them                                           | Něige dōu hǎo.                                      |
| 7. Shéi huì shuō Zhōngguó huà?<br>everyone                          | Shéi dōu huì shuō Zhōngguó huà.                     |



F. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                                                               |                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒmen míngtiān zài zhèr<br>jiàn ne, háishi zài<br>nàr jiàn ne?<br>(cue) nǎr<br>(Shall we meet here or<br>there tomorrow?) | <u>You</u> : Zài nǎr jiàn dōu kényi.<br>(Anywhere would be fine.) |
| 2. Wǒmen zuò huǒchē qù ne, háishi<br>zuò fēijī qù ne? zěnme                                                                                   | Zěnme qù dōu kényi.                                               |
| 3. Wǒmen míngtiān jiǔdiǎn zhōng<br>jiàn ne, háishi shídiǎn zhōng<br>jiàn ne? jǐdiǎn zhōng                                                     | Jǐdiǎn zhōng jiàn dōu kényi.                                      |
| 4. Wǒmen zuò qìchē qù ne, háishi<br>zuò huǒchē qù ne?<br>shénme chē                                                                           | Shénme chē dōu kényi.                                             |
| 5. Wǒmen míngtiān qù ne, háishi<br>hòutiān qù ne? něitiān                                                                                     | Něitiān qù dōu kényi.                                             |
| 6. Wǒmen Xīngqīyī qù ne, háishi<br>Xīngqīèr qù ne?<br>xīngqījǐ                                                                                | Xīngqījǐ qù dōu kényi.                                            |
| 7. Wǒmen zuò fēijī qù ne, háishi zuò<br>huǒchē qù ne? zěnme                                                                                   | Zěnme qù dōu kényi.                                               |

G. Response Drill

- |                                                   |                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Shéi lái?<br>(Who is coming?) | <u>You</u> : Shéi dōu lái.<br>(Everyone is coming.) |
| 2. Shénme dìfang bù hǎo?                          | Shénme dìfang dōu bù hǎo.                           |
| 3. Něige dìfang kényi?                            | Něige dìfang dōu kényi.                             |
| 4. Shéi bú huì?                                   | Shéi dōu bú huì.                                    |
| 5. Nǎr hǎo?                                       | Nǎr dōu hǎo.                                        |
| 6. Tā shénme shíhou néng qù?                      | Tā shénme shíhou dōu néng qù.                       |
| 7. Nǐ něitiān bù máng?                            | Wǒ něitiān dōu bù máng.                             |

D. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                        |                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Shénme shíhou dōu kéyi.<br>(cue) shéi<br>(Any time would be fine.) | <u>You</u> : Shéi dōu kéyi.<br>(Anyone would be fine.) |
| 2. Shéi dōu kéyi. nǎr                                                                  | Nǎr dōu kéyi.                                          |
| 3. Nǎr dōu kéyi. něige                                                                 | Něige dōu kéyi.                                        |
| 4. Něige dōu kéyi. shénme dìfang                                                       | Shénme dìfang dōu kéyi.                                |
| 5. Shénme dìfang dōu kéyi.<br>duōshao                                                  | Duōshao dōu kéyi.                                      |
| 6. Duōshao dōu kéyi. duó jiǔ                                                           | Duó jiǔ dōu kéyi.                                      |
| 7. Duó jiǔ dōu kéyi.                                                                   |                                                        |

E. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                         |                                                                          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Shénme shíhou dōu kéyi.<br>(cue) any length of<br>time<br>(Any time would be fine.) | <u>You</u> : Duó jiǔ dōu kéyi.<br>(Any length of time would be<br>fine.) |
| 2. Jǐdiǎn zhōng dōu kéyi.<br>any number of hours                                                        | Jǐge zhōngtóu dōu kéyi.                                                  |
| 3. Něitiān dōu kéyi.<br>any number of days                                                              | Duōshao tiān dōu kéyi.                                                   |
| 4. Něinián dōu kéyi.<br>any number of years                                                             | Jǐnián dōu kéyi.                                                         |
| 5. Xīngqījǐ dōu kéyi.<br>any number of weeks                                                            | Jǐge xīngqī dōu kéyi.                                                    |
| 6. Jǐhào dōu kéyi.<br>any number of days                                                                | Duōshao tiān dōu kéyi.                                                   |
| 7. Jǐyuè dōu kéyi.<br>any number of months                                                              | Jǐge yuè dōu kéyi.                                                       |

- |                                                                      |                                                       |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 5. Wáng Tóngzhì xiànzài zài gēn<br>Zhāng Kēzhǎng jiǎnghuà.<br>yìhuìr | Yìhuìr qǐng ta gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà,<br>hǎo bu hǎo?  |
| 6. Lǐ Nǚshì xiànzài zài gēn Wáng<br>Dàshǐ kāi huì. jīntiān           | Jīntiān qǐng ta gěi wǒ huí ge<br>diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo? |
| 7. Zhū Tóngzhì xiànzài zài xué<br>Zhōngwén. xiàwǔ                    | Xiàwǔ qǐng ta gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà,<br>hǎo bu hǎo?   |

C. Expansion Drill

- |                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ<br>dāngmiàn tántan.<br>(I would like to talk<br>with you in person.) | <u>You</u> : Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì<br>shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn<br>tántan.<br>(The reason I called you is<br>that I would like to talk with<br>you in person.) |
| 2. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ yíjiàn shì.                                                                           | Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì xiǎng<br>wèn nǐ yíjiàn shì.                                                                                                          |
| 3. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ jǐdiǎn zhōng<br>yǒu gōngfu.                                                           | Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì xiǎng<br>wèn nǐ jǐdiǎn zhōng yǒu gōngfu.                                                                                             |
| 4. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tántan.                                                                      | Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì xiǎng<br>gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tántan.                                                                                                     |
| 5. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ yìdiǎnr shì.                                                                          | Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì<br>xiǎng wèn nǐ yìdiǎnr shì.                                                                                                         |
| 6. Wǒ xiǎng wèn nǐ sāndiǎn zhōng<br>yǒu gōngfu meiyǒu.                                                   | Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì<br>xiǎng wèn nǐ sāndiǎn zhōng yǒu<br>gōngfu meiyǒu.                                                                                  |
| 7. Wǒ xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tántan.                                                                      | Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdì shì<br>xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tántan.                                                                                                     |

DRILLS

A. Substitution Drill

- |                                                                                                       |                                                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā xiànzài zài kāi huì.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) dǎ diànhuà<br>(He is at a meeting now.) | <u>You</u> : Tā xiànzài zài dǎ diànhuà.<br>(He is making a phone call now.) |
| 2. Tā xiànzài zài dǎ diànhuà.<br>dēng nǐ                                                              | Tā xiànzài zài dēng nǐ.                                                     |
| 3. Tā xiànzài zài dēng nǐ.<br>gēn Wáng Xiānsheng shuō huà                                             | Tā xiànzài zài gēn Wáng Xiānsheng shuō huà.                                 |
| 4. Tā xiànzài zài gēn Wáng Xiānsheng shuō huà.<br>gōngzuò                                             | Tā xiànzài zài gōngzuò.                                                     |
| 5. Tā xiànzài zài gōngzuò.<br>jiǎng huà                                                               | Tā xiànzài zài jiǎng huà.                                                   |
| 6. Tā xiànzài zài jiǎng huà.<br>huàn qián                                                             | Tā xiànzài zài huàn qián.                                                   |
| 7. Tā xiànzài zài huàn qián.                                                                          |                                                                             |

B. Response Drill

- |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <u>Speaker</u> : Tā xiànzài zài kāi huì.<br>( <u>cue</u> ) yìhuǐr<br>(He is at a meeting now.) | <u>You</u> : Yìhuǐr qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?<br>(In a little while please ask him to call me back. All right?) |
| 2. Wáng Tóngzhì xiànzài zài jiǎng huà.<br>xiàwǔ                                                   | Xiàwǔ qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?                                                                                 |
| 3. Zhāng Tóngzhì xiànzài zài xué Zhōngguó huà.<br>shàngwǔ                                         | Shàngwǔ qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?                                                                               |
| 4. Mǎ Kēzhǎng xiànzài zài dǎ diànhuà.<br>míngtiān                                                 | Míngtiān qǐng tā gěi wǒ huí ge diànhuà, hǎo bu hǎo?                                                                              |

nuclear engineer	hézǐ gōngchéngshī
nurse	hùshi
office staff worker	zhíyuán
(Chinese) opera performer	jīngjù yǎnyuán
painter (artist)	huàjiā
pharmacist	yàojìshī
pilot	fēixíngyuán
policeman	jīngchá
postman	yóudìyuán
professor	jiàoshòu
reporter	jìzhě
sailor	hǎiyuán, shuǐshǒu, chuányuán
salesman	tuīxiāoyuán
secretary	mìshū
servant	yōngren
shoemaker	xiéjiāngshīfu
shoe repairman	xiūxiéde
store clerk, salesperson	shòuhuòyuán
teacher	jiàoyuán
typist	dǎzìyuán
(star) vocalist	gēxīng
waiter, waitress	fàndiàn fúwùyuán

VOCABULARY BOOSTER

Occupations

accountant	kuàijìshī
actor, actress	yānyuán
architect	jiànzhùshī
athlete	yùndòngyuán
author, writer	zuòjiā
barber	lǐfàshī, lǐfàde
blue-collar worker	gōngrén
builder	yíngzàooshāng
businessman	shāngrén
carpenter	mùjiāng, mùgōng
chemical engineer	huàxué gōngchéngshī
civil engineer	tǔmù gōngchéngshī
civil servant	gōngwùyuán
composer	zuòqǔjiā
cook	chúshī
customs official	hǎiguān guānyuán
diplomat	wàijiāoguān
doctor	dàifu, yīshēng
(newspaper) editor	biānji
electrical engineer	diànjī gōngchéngshī
electrician	diàngōng
employee, clerk, attendant	fúwùyuán
farmer, peasant	nóngmín
fisherman	yúmín
gardener	yuándǐng, huājiàng
governess	bǎomǔ
government minister	bùzhǎng
housewife	jiāting zhǔfù, jiāting fùnǚ
lawyer	lǚshī
manager	jīnglǐ
mayor	shìzhǎng
mechanic	jīxièshī, jīxièyuán
mechanical engineer	jīxiè gōngchéngshī
movie star	diànyǐng míngxīng
musician	yīnyuèjiā

- |                                                           |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 7. A: Zài nǎr jiàn ne?                                    | Where shall we meet?                             |
| B: Liǎngdiǎn zhōng qǐng nǐ dào wǒ zhèr lái, xíng bu xíng? | Please come over here at two o'clock. All right? |
| A: Hǎo. Míngtiān liǎngdiǎn zhōng jiàn.                    | Okay. See you tomorrow at two o'clock.           |

Notes on No. 7

Dào wǒ zhèr lái means, literally, "come over to the place where I am." While plurals such as wǒmen zhèr and nǐmen nàr often refer to institutions, the singular wǒ zhèr, nǐ nàr, and tā nàr usually refer to any place where a person might be. In an office shared by two people, for instance, you could say Wǒ zhèr méiyǒu Yīng-Hàn zìdiǎn; nǐn nàr yǒu méiyǒu? "I don't have an English-Chinese dictionary over here; do you have one over there?"

Dào, like zài, is a verb which requires a place word as its object. Sentences like "Come over here to me" and "Go over there to Mr. Wáng" must be translated as Dào wǒ zhèr lái and Dào Wáng Xiānsheng nàr qù. Zhèr and nàr make wǒ and Wáng Xiānsheng parts of place-word phrases.

- |                      |                                               |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 8. guānxi            | relation, relationship, connection            |
| 9. jiǎng huà         | to speak, to talk; a speech                   |
| 10. lǐngshìguǎn      | consulate                                     |
| 11. shìqìng (yíjiàn) | matter, business, affair                      |
| 12. sīzhǎng          | department chief                              |
| 13. yǒu guānxi       | to relate to, to have a bearing on, to matter |

Note on Additional Required Vocabulary

Yǒu guānxi: To talk about the relationship of two things, use ...gēn...yǒu guānxi or ...hé...yǒu guānxi.

Lǐngshìguǎn hé dàshìguǎn yǒu shénmeyàngde guānxi?	What is the relationship between the consulate and the embassy?
------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------

6. A: Míngtiān duì ni héshì ma? Would tomorrow be all right for you?  
B: Míngtiān xiǎowǔ shénme shíhou Any time tomorrow afternoon would be  
dōu kěyì. fine.

Note on No. 6

Shénme shíhou dōu kěyì, "anytime is okay" (more literally, "what[ever] time, all is okay"), illustrates a pattern for expressing the idea of "any" in Chinese: a question word, such as shéi, shénme, nǎr, and něitiān, followed by dōu, "all."

Shéi dōu néng qù.	Anyone can go.
Nǎr dōu kěyì.	Anyplace will do.
Shénme dōu kěyì.	Anything will do.
Něitiān dōu hǎo.	Any day is good.
Zěnme zuò dōu hǎo.	Any way (you) do it is fine.

The ideas of "nobody," "nowhere," "nothing," and "none" are expressed by adding bù or méi after dōu in the pattern above.

Shéi dōu bú yào zǒu.	Nobody wants to leave.
Nǎr dōu bú duì.	No place is right.
Zěnme dōu bù xíng.	No way will do.
Shénme dōu méiyǒu.	There is nothing.

The "any/no" expression need not be the subject of a sentence; it may also be the object. Even if the expression is the direct object, it must precede the verb.

Tā shéi dōu xǐhuan.	He likes anyone/everyone.
Wǒ nǎr dōu bú qù.	I won't go anywhere.
Nèige shāngdiàn shénme dōu mài.	That store sells everything.
Tā něige dōu bù xǐhuan.	He doesn't like either/any of them.

(As objects, many of these expressions must be translated as "every....")

An "any/no" expression may also be the object of a prepositional verb.

Wǒ gēn shéi dōu méi shuō huà.	I didn't speak with anyone.
-------------------------------	-----------------------------



4. B: Duìbuqǐ, jīntiān zǎoshang nǐ  
dǎ diànhuà láide shíhou wǒ  
zài kāi huì, méi shíjiān  
gēn ni shuō huà. I'm sorry. When you called here  
this morning, I was in a meeting  
and didn't have time to speak  
with you.
- A: Méi guānxi. Wǒ zhīdao nǐ  
hěn máng. It doesn't matter. I know you are  
very busy.

Notes on No. 4

Dǎ diànhuà means "to make a phone call." (Literally, dǎ means "to hit.")

Wǒ zuótiān wǎnshang gěi Mǎ  
Tàitai dǎle yige diànhuà. I called Mrs. Mǎ last night.

Wǒ dǎ liǎngge diànhuà jiù  
lái. I'll be right there after I make  
a couple of phone calls.

Shuō huà, "to speak," is a verb with a general object--literally,  
"speak words." Verb + general object is often translated into English  
by a verb alone: niàn shū, "to study"; kāi chē, "to drive."

Méi guānxi: Other translations for this very useful expression are  
"that's okay," "don't worry about it," "it doesn't make any difference."  
Literally, méi guānxi would be translated as "there isn't any connection."

5. A: Wǒ gěi ni dǎ diànhuàde mùdi  
shì xiǎng gēn ni dāngmiàn  
tántan. The reason I called you is that I  
would like to talk with you in  
person.
- B: Hǎo a. Shénme shíhou a? All right. When?

Note on No. 5

Wǒ gěi ni dǎ diànhuàde mùdi shì...: In English, the word "reason," or  
"purpose," begins the phrase, with the modifying clause following. In  
Chinese, everything modifying "the purpose" precedes mùdi.

Wǒ gěi ni dǎ diànhuà -de mùdi shì . . . .

(The reason why I called you is . . . .)

Mùdi, "purpose," "aim," "objective": Although translated idiomatically  
as "reason" in exchange 5, mùdi does not really mean "reason"/"cause." The  
English terms should be translated as yuányīn: wǒ lái wǎnde yuányīn, "the  
reason I came late"

Gěi ni huí diànhuà, "call you back": You have learned the prepositional verb gěi, meaning "for [the benefit of]." In gěi ni huí diànhuà, gěi is translated as "to." Because there are two meanings for gěi, occasionally a sentence may be ambiguous. For example, Wǒ gěi ta jìqù liǎngbāo cháoyè means either "I sent two packages of tea to him" or "I mailed out two packages of tea for him."

Duì is also translated as "to." Duì introduces the target; gěi introduces the receiver. In other words, duì expresses the intended direction but does not necessarily imply that the target is reached. Gěi usually implies receiving, as you might expect, since it means "give" as a full verb.

You use gěi to indicate the receiver when you say

<u>gěi ta dǎ diànhuà</u>	telephone her
<u>gěi ta xiě yìfēng xìn</u>	write her a letter
<u>gěi ta mǎile yìge fángzi</u>	bought her a house

But, to indicate the target, you say

<u>duì ta hǎo</u>	be nice to her
<u>duì ta kèqì</u>	be polite to him
<u>duì ta shēngqì</u>	get angry at her

Notice that duì is used especially to indicate the target of feelings and attitudes, while gěi is used with actions such as calling, mailing, and sending.

3. A: Hǎo, xièxie ni.  
C: Bú xiè.

Fine. Thank you.  
Don't mention it.

### Note on No. 3

Bú xiè is an idiom meaning something like "don't thank [me]." (Literally, "Don't thank me" would be Bié xiè wǒ.)

Děng nǐ kǎnwán bàozhǐ, wǒmen chūqu mǎi cài.	When you have finished the paper, we will go out to buy groceries.
Xué Yīngwén nán bu nán? Děng nǐ xuéde shíhou jiù zhīdao le.	Is it hard to learn English? When you study it, then you'll know.
Nǐ bú shi yǒu yíjiàn shì yào gāosong wǒ ma? Děng chíwán fàn zài shuō.	Don't you have something you want to tell me? Wait until we finish eating; then we'll talk about it.

The translation of děng as "wait until," in the last example above, might suggest that the word is used only in future contexts. But děng is also used in past contexts:

Zuótiān tā méiyǒu hé ni yìqǐ qù kàn diànyǐng ma? Méiyǒu. Děng tā huílaide shíhou dōu shíyídiǎn le.	Didn't he go out with you to a movie last night? No. It was already eleven o'clock when he got home.
Zuótiān tā bādiǎn zhōng cái huí jiā. Děng tā huí jiā wǒmen cái zuò fàn, nǐ xiǎng jǐdiǎn cái chī fàn!	Yesterday he didn't get home until eight o'clock. We didn't fix dinner until he got home; so imagine what time it was when we ate!

Kāi huì, "to meet," "to hold a meeting," is an example of a verb and its general object.

Kāiwán, "finish holding [the meeting]": Wán is the verb "to finish." It is used as an ending in a compound verb of result in No. 2.\* Wán expresses the idea of "over," "up," as in "Class is over," "All the paper has been used up."

But be careful: wán is not used as a main verb when an object follows the verb. Instead of saying "finish this," using wán by itself, you would say bǎ zhèige chíwán, "finish eating this"; bǎ zhèige zuòwán, "finish doing this"; or bǎ zhèige kǎnwán, "finish reading this."

Wán may sometimes be used as a main verb when there is no object, as in Diànyǐng wán le, "The movie is finished." But far more often wán occurs as an ending which indicates result.

Diànhuà (literally, "electric speech") may mean either "telephone" or "telephone call."

Huí diànhuà, "to return a phone call," "to call back": You have learned the verb huí, "to return," as in Nǐ shénme shíhou huíqu? "When are you going back?" In No. 2, huí takes a direct object, diànhuà. Compare huí diànhuà with dǎ diànhuà, "to make a phone call," which is found in exchange 4.

---

\*You have already seen wán in Piào dōu màiwán le.

2. C: Òu, tā xiànzài zài kāi huì. Oh, she is at a meeting now.  
 C: Dēng tā kāiwán huì wǒ gào sòng tā gěi nǐ huí diànhuà. When she is finished with the meeting, I will tell her to return your call.

Notes on No. 2

Zài is the aspect marker for ongoing actions. It indicates that the action is in progress. The corresponding verb in the English translation usually ends in -ing. Zài is used only with verbs which express actual dynamic action. State and process verbs may not be used with zài. Many action verbs may be used with zài, but some do not have enough "action" to be used (e.g., "sitting").

Tā lái de shíhou, nǐ zài niàn shū.	When he came, you were studying.
Tāmen zài kàn diànyǐng.	They are watching a movie.
Tāmen zài hē kāfēi.	They are drinking coffee.
Tāmen zài shàng kè.	They are having class.

Zài is placed in front of the verb, unlike other aspect markers, such as le, guo, and de.

To make ongoing-action sentences negative, use bù. To form a question with zài, use shì bu shì zài, zài...ma, or zài bu zài.

Xuésheng zài shàng kè ma?	Are the students having class?
Tāmen bú zài shàng kè, yǐjīng zǒu le.	They are not having class. They have already left.
Tā lái de shíhou, nǐ shì bu shì zài niàn shū?	Weren't you studying when he came over?
Bù, bú zài niàn shū, yǐjīng wánr qu le.	No, I wasn't studying. I had already gone out to play.
Tā zài bu zài kàn diànshì?	Is he watching television?

The aspect marker zài and the aspect marker ne often occur in the same sentence, indicating absence of change.

Tā zài kàn bào ne. She is reading the paper.

Sometimes ne is used without zài.

Tā kàn bào ne. She is reading the paper.

Dēng, literally "to wait": In the second sentence of No. 2, the verb dēng is used at the beginning of a phrase to mean "when." Dēng may be used with de shíhou, "when," in the same phrase. Often, the second part of a sentence beginning with dēng will contain an adverb meaning "then"--jiù, zài, or cái.

REFERENCE NOTES

1. C: Wèi, Měidàsī. Hello. Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.
- A: Wǒ shì Jiānádà Dàshǐguǎnde Qiáozhì Dáféi. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Kēzhǎng jiǎngyijiǎng. I am George Duffy of the Canadian Embassy. I have something I would like to discuss with Section Chief Wáng.

Notes on No. 1

Měidàsī: In Chinese, abbreviations are made up of one syllable from each word in a term. In Měidàsī, měi stands for Měizhōu, "American continent." Dà stands for Dà yáng zhōu, "Oceania" (the islands of the South Central Pacific, including Australia and New Zealand). The ending sī means "department." It is used only within organizations on the national level.

Dàshǐguǎn: The word guǎn means "building" or "establishment," as in fànguǎn, an establishment where food is sold. The examples below illustrate the use of guǎn.

dàshǐ	ambassador
dàshǐguǎn	embassy
lǐngshì	consul
lǐngshǐguǎn	consulate
zhǎnlǎn	exhibit
zhǎnlǎnguǎn	exhibition hall

Notice that the shǐ in dàshǐguǎn and the shì in lǐngshǐguǎn lose their tones.

Yíjiàn shì: The counter -jiàn in this expression is also the counter for luggage. Yíjiàn shì literally means "a piece of business."

Jiǎng and jiǎng huà: The English word "speak," meaning the activity in general, must be translated into Chinese with a verb and its GENERAL OBJECT: jiǎng huà. In other uses, the verb "to speak," jiǎng, may be followed by a specific object or a phrase showing duration, or it may be changed into a multisyllabic verb, such as jiǎngyijiǎng. Other verbs which are used the same way are shuō huà, xiě zì, and niàn shū.

Tā zài jiǎng Zhōngguóde shìqìng. He is talking about Chinese affairs.

Tā yǐjīng jiǎngle bù shǎo. He has already said a lot.

Tāde jiǎng huà hěn yǒu yìsi. His talk was very interesting.

Jiǎng is not used to say that someone said something. Instead, shuō is used.

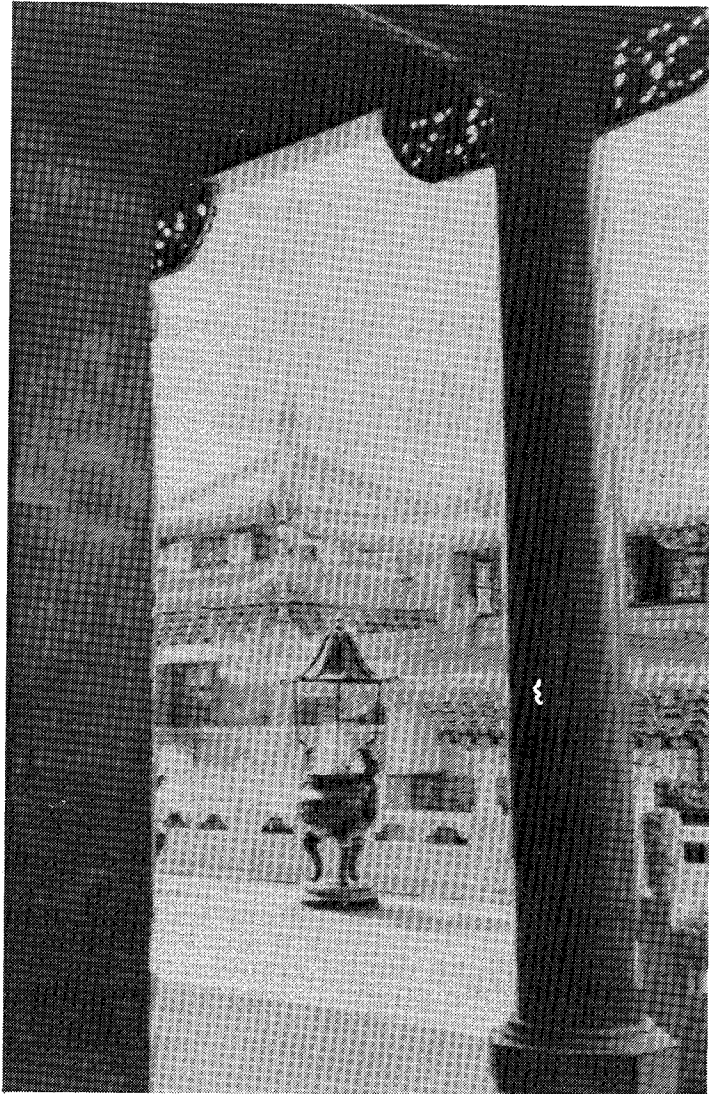
Tā shuō tā bù néng lái. He said he could not come.

VOCABULARY

bú xiè	don't mention it
dàshiguǎn diànhuà	embassy telephone, phone call
guānxi	relation, relationship, connection
-jiàn	(counter for matters, business, affairs)
jiǎng	to discuss (something), to talk about (something)
jiǎng huà	to speak, to talk; a speech
kāi huì kāiwán huì	to attend a meeting to finish a meeting
lǐngshiguǎn	consulate
Měidàsī	Department of American and Oceanic Affairs
méi guānxi mùdi	it doesn't matter reason, objective, purpose
shì (yíjiàn) shìqing (yíjiàn) shuō huà sīzhǎng	matter, business, affair matter, business, affair to speak department chief
yǒu guānxi	to relate, to have a bearing on, to matter
zài	in the midst of (marker of ongoing action)
 (introduced on C-2 and P-2 tapes)	
chī	to eat
dàxuéshēng	college student
diànhuà hàomǎ	telephone number
dù jià	to spend one's vacation
hòulái	later
láodòng	to do manual labor
Qíngbàosī	Intelligence Bureau (part of the Ministry of Foreign Affairs, PRC)
shēnghuó	life
tóngyì	to agree

ADDITIONAL REQUIRED VOCABULARY  
(not presented on C-1 and P-1 tapes)

- |                      |                                                  |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| 8. guānxi            | relation, relationship, connection               |
| 9. jiǎng huà         | to speak, to talk; a speech                      |
| 10. lǐngshìguǎn      | consulate                                        |
| 11. shìqing (yíjiàn) | matter, business, affair                         |
| 12. sīzhǎng          | department chief                                 |
| 13. yǒu guānxi       | to relate to, to have a bearing on,<br>to matter |



UNIT 2

REFERENCE LIST

(in Běijīng)

1. C: Wèi, Měidàsī. Hello. Department of American and Oceanic Affairs.  
 A: Wǒ shì Jiānádà Dàshìguǎnde Qiáozhì Dáféi. Wǒ yǒu yíjiàn shì xiǎng gēn Wáng Kēzhǎng jiǎngyìjiāng. I am George Duffy of the Canadian Embassy. I have something I would like to discuss with Section Chief Wáng.
2. C: Ōu, tā xiànzài zài kāi huì. Oh, she is at a meeting now.  
 C: Děng tā kāiwán huì wǒ gāosòng tā gěi nǐ huí diànhuà. When she is finished with the meeting, I will tell her to return your call.
3. A: Hǎo, xièxie nǐ. Fine. Thank you.  
 C: Bú xiè. Don't mention it.
4. B: Duìbuqǐ, jīntiān zǎoshang nǐ dǎ diànhuà laide shíhou wǒ zài kāi huì, méi shíjiān gēn nǐ shuō huà. I'm sorry. When you called here this morning, I was in a meeting and didn't have time to speak with you.  
 A: Méi guānxi. Wǒ zhīdao nǐ hěn máng. It doesn't matter. I know you are very busy.
5. A: Wǒ gěi nǐ dǎ diànhuàde mùdi shì xiǎng gēn nǐ dāngmiàn tántan. The reason I called you is that I would like to talk with you in person.  
 B: Hǎo a. Shénme shíhou a? All right. When?
6. A: Míngtiān duì nǐ héshì ma? Would tomorrow be all right for you?  
 B: Míngtiān xiàwǔ shénme shíhou dōu kényi. Any time tomorrow afternoon would be fine.
7. A: Zài nǎr jiàn ne? Where shall we meet?  
 B: Liǎngdiǎn zhōng qǐng nǐ dào wǒ zhèr lái, xíng bu xíng? Please come over here at two o'clock. All right?  
 A: Hǎo. Míngtiān liǎngdiǎn zhōng jiàn. Okay. See you tomorrow at two o'clock.